MC9S08SC4

Reference Manual

This document contains information on a new product under development. Freescale reserves the right to change or discontinue this product without notice.

HCS08 Microcontrollers

MC9S08SC4RM
Rev. 4
7/2010

freescale.com

MC9S08SC4 Features

8-Bit HCS08 Central Processor Unit (CPU)

- Up to 40 MHz HCS08 CPU (central processor unit); up to 20 MHz bus frequency
- HC08 instruction set with added BGND instruction

On-Chip Memory

- 4 KB of FLASH with read/program/erase over full operating voltage and temperature
- 256 bytes of Random-access memory (RAM)

Power-Saving Modes

- Two very low power stop modes
- Reduced power wait mode

Clock Source Options

- Oscillator (XOSC) — Loop-control Pierce oscillator; Crystal or ceramic resonator range of 32 kHz to 38.4 kHz or 1 MHz to 16 MHz
- Internal Clock Source (ICS) — Internal clock source module containing a frequency-locked loop (FLL) controlled by internal or external reference; precision trimming of internal reference allows 0.2 % resolution and 2.0 % deviation over temperature and voltage; supports bus frequencies from 2 MHz to 20 MHz.

System Protection

- Watchdog computer operating properly (COP) reset with option to run from dedicated 1 kHz internal clock source or bus clock
- Low-voltage detection with reset or interrupt; selectable trip points
- Illegal opcode detection with reset
- Illegal address detection with reset
- FLASH block protect
- Reset on loss of clock

Development Support

- Single-wire background debug interface
- Breakpoint capability to allow single breakpoint setting during in-circuit debugging

Peripherals

- **SCI** — Serial Communication Interface
  - Full-duplex non-return to zero (NRZ)
  - LIN master extended break generation
  - LIN slave extended break detection
  - Wake-up on active edge
- **TPMx** — Two 2-channel Timer/PWM modules (TPM1 and TPM2)
  - 16-bit modulus or up/down counters
  - Input capture, output compare, buffered edge-aligned or center-aligned PWM
- **ADC** — Analog to Digital Converter
  - 8-channel, 10-bit resolution
  - 2.5 µs conversion time
  - Automatic compare function
  - Temperature sensor
  - Internal bandgap reference channel

Input/Output

- 12 general purpose I/O pins (GPIOs)
- 8 interrupt pins with selectable polarity
- Hysteresis and configurable pull-up device on all input pins; Configurable slew rate and drive strength on all output pins.

Package Options

- 16-TSSOP

Operating Parameters

- 4.5-5.5 V operation
- C,V, M temperature ranges available, covering -40 - 125 °C operation

MC9S08SC4 Reference Manual

Covers MC9S08SC4

MC9S08SC4
Rev. 4
7/2010

This document contains information on a new product under development. Freescale reserves the right to change or discontinue this product without notice.

Revision History

To provide the most up-to-date information, the version of our documents on the World Wide Web will be the most current. Your printed copy may be an earlier revision. To verify you have the latest information available, refer to:

http://freescale.com/

The following revision history table summarizes changes contained in this document.

Revision Number	Revision Date	Description of Changes
1	9/2008	• Initial Release
2	7/2009	• Added C and V temperature ranges in the device feature list • Updated Table 5-11 • Updated ADC, SCI and TPM block guide, updated disclaimer page
3	3/2010	• Clarified ICS deviation and SCI LIN features at page 1 • Updated Flash flow-charts • Included updated SCI block guide replacing the instances of BUXCLK to the SCI module clock
4	7/2010	• Clarified note in Figure 2-2 • Updated Section 2.2.4: Background / Mode Select (BKGD/MS) • Updated Section 3.4: Active Background Mode • Updated Section 12.1.1: Forcing Active Background

Contents

Section Number	Title	Page

Chapter 1

Device Overview 15

Chapter 2

Pins and Connections 19

Chapter 3

Modes of Operation 25

Chapter 4

Memory 31

Chapter 5

Resets, Interrupts, and General System Control 57

Chapter 6

Parallel Input/Output Control 71

Chapter 7

Central Processor Unit (S08CPUV5) 83

Chapter 8

Analog-to-Digital Converter (S08ADCV1) 103

Chapter 9

Internal Clock Source (S08ICSV3) 131

Chapter 10

Serial Communications Interface (S08SCIV4) 145

Chapter 11

Timer Pulse-Width Modulator (S08TPMV3) 163

Chapter 12

Development Support 184

Contents

Section Number **Title** **Page**

Chapter 1 Device Overview

1.1 Devices in the MC9S08SC4 Series 15
1.2 MCU Block Diagram 16
1.3 System Clock Distribution 17

Chapter 2 Pins and Connections

2.1 Device Pin Assignment 19
2.2 Recommended System Connections 20
  2.2.1 Power 20
  2.2.2 Oscillator (XOSC) 21
  2.2.3 $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ Pin 21
  2.2.4 Background / Mode Select (BKGD/MS) 22
  2.2.5 General-Purpose I/O and Peripheral Ports 22

Chapter 3 Modes of Operation

3.1 Introduction 25
3.2 Features 25
3.3 Run Mode 25
3.4 Active Background Mode 25
3.5 Wait Mode 26
3.6 Stop Modes 26
  3.6.1 Stop3 Mode 27
  3.6.2 Stop2 Mode 28
  3.6.3 On-Chip Peripheral Modules in Stop Modes 28

Chapter 4 Memory

4.1 MC9S08SC4 Memory Map 31
4.2 Reset and Interrupt Vector Assignments 32
4.3 Register Addresses and Bit Assignments 33
4.4 RAM 38
4.5 FLASH 38
  4.5.1 Features 38
  4.5.2 Program and Erase Times 39

Section Number	Title	Page

4.5.3 Flash Commands 39
4.5.4 Access Errors 47
4.5.5 FLASH Block Protection 47
4.5.6 Vector Redirection 48
4.6 Security 48
4.7 FLASH Registers and Control Bits 49
4.7.1 FLASH Clock Divider Register (FCDIV) 50
4.7.2 FLASH Options Register (FOPT and NVOPT) 51
4.7.3 FLASH Configuration Register (FCNFG) 52
4.7.4 FLASH Protection Register (FPROT and NVPROT) 52
4.7.5 FLASH Status Register (FSTAT) 53
4.7.6 FLASH Command Register (FCMD) 54

Chapter 5
Resets, Interrupts, and General System Control

5.1 Introduction 57
5.2 Features 57
5.3 MCU Reset 57
5.4 Computer Operating Properly (COP) Watchdog 58
5.5 Interrupts 59
5.5.1 Interrupt Stack Frame 60
5.5.2 Interrupt Vectors, Sources, and Local Masks 61
5.6 Low-Voltage Detect (LVD) System 63
5.6.1 Power-On Reset Operation 63
5.6.2 Low-Voltage Detection (LVD) Reset Operation 63
5.6.3 Low-Voltage Warning (LVW) Interrupt Operation 63
5.7 Reset, Interrupt, and System Control Registers and Control Bits 63
5.7.1 System Reset Status Register (SRS) 64
5.7.2 System Background Debug Force Reset Register (SBDFR) 65
5.7.3 System Options Register 1 (SOPT1) 66
5.7.4 System Options Register 2 (SOPT2) 67
5.7.5 System Device Identification Register (SDIDH, SDIDL) 68
5.7.6 System Power Management Status and Control 1 Register (SPMSC1) 69
5.7.7 System Power Management Status and Control 2 Register (SPMSC2) 70

Chapter 6
Parallel Input/Output Control

6.1 Port Data and Data Direction 71
6.2 Pull-up, Slew Rate, and Drive Strength 72
6.3 Pin Interrupts 73
6.3.1 Edge Only Sensitivity 73
6.3.2 Edge and Level Sensitivity 73

Section Number	Title	Page

6.3.3 Pull-up/Pull-down Resistors 74
6.3.4 Pin Interrupt Initialization 74
6.4 Pin Behavior in Stop Modes 74
6.5 Parallel I/O and Pin Control Registers 74
6.5.1 Port A Registers 75
6.5.2 Port B Registers 79

Chapter 7 Central Processor Unit (S08CPUV5)

7.1 Introduction 83
7.1.1 Features 83
7.2 Programmer's Model and CPU Registers 84
7.2.1 Accumulator (A) 84
7.2.2 Index Register (H:X) 84
7.2.3 Stack Pointer (SP) 85
7.2.4 Program Counter (PC) 85
7.2.5 Condition Code Register (CCR) 85
7.3 Addressing Modes 87
7.3.1 Inherent Addressing Mode (INH) 87
7.3.2 Relative Addressing Mode (REL) 87
7.3.3 Immediate Addressing Mode (IMM) 87
7.3.4 Direct Addressing Mode (DIR) 87
7.3.5 Extended Addressing Mode (EXT) 88
7.3.6 Indexed Addressing Mode 88
7.4 Special Operations 89
7.4.1 Reset Sequence 89
7.4.2 Interrupt Sequence 89
7.4.3 Wait Mode Operation 90
7.4.4 Stop Mode Operation 90
7.4.5 BGND Instruction 91
7.5 HCS08 Instruction Set Summary 92

Chapter 8 Analog-to-Digital Converter (S08ADCV1)

8.1 Introduction 103
8.1.1 Channel Assignments 103
8.1.2 Alternate Clock 104
8.1.3 Temperature Sensor 105
8.1.4 Features 107
8.1.5 ADC Module Block Diagram 107
8.2 External Signal Description 108
8.2.1 Analog Power (V_{DDA}) 109

Section Number	Title	Page

8.2.2 Analog Ground (V_{SSA}) . . . 109
8.2.3 Voltage Reference High (V_{REFH}) . . . 109
8.2.4 Voltage Reference Low (V_{REFL}) . . . 109
8.2.5 Analog Channel Inputs (ADx) . . . 109
8.3 Register Definition . . . 109
8.3.1 Status and Control Register 1 (ADCSC1) . . . 110
8.3.2 Status and Control Register 2 (ADCSC2) . . . 111
8.3.3 Data Result High Register (ADCRH) . . . 112
8.3.4 Data Result Low Register (ADCRL) . . . 112
8.3.5 Compare Value High Register (ADCCVH) . . . 113
8.3.6 Compare Value Low Register (ADCCVL) . . . 113
8.3.7 Configuration Register (ADCCFG) . . . 113
8.3.8 Pin Control 1 Register (APCTL1) . . . 115
8.3.9 Pin Control 2 Register (APCTL2) . . . 116
8.3.10 Pin Control 3 Register (APCTL3) . . . 117
8.4 Functional Description . . . 118
8.4.1 Clock Select and Divide Control . . . 118
8.4.2 Input Select and Pin Control . . . 119
8.4.3 Hardware Trigger . . . 119
8.4.4 Conversion Control . . . 119
8.4.5 Automatic Compare Function . . . 122
8.4.6 MCU Wait Mode Operation . . . 123
8.4.7 MCU Stop3 Mode Operation . . . 123
8.4.8 MCU Stop2 Mode Operation . . . 124
8.5 Initialization Information . . . 124
8.5.1 ADC Module Initialization Example . . . 124
8.6 Application Information . . . 126
8.6.1 External Pins and Routing . . . 126
8.6.2 Sources of Error . . . 128

Chapter 9
Internal Clock Source (S08ICSV3)

9.1 Introduction . . . 131
9.1.1 DCO Select Bits . . . 131
9.1.2 Module Configuration . . . 131
9.1.3 Features . . . 133
9.1.4 Block Diagram . . . 133
9.1.5 Modes of Operation . . . 134
9.2 External Signal Description . . . 135
9.3 Register Definition . . . 135
9.3.1 ICS Control Register 1 (ICSC1) . . . 136
9.3.2 ICS Control Register 2 (ICSC2) . . . 137

Section Number	Title	Page

9.3.3 ICS Trim Register (ICSTRM) 138
9.3.4 ICS Status and Control (ICSSC) 138
9.4 Functional Description 140
9.4.1 Operational Modes 140
9.4.2 Mode Switching 142
9.4.3 Bus Frequency Divider 143
9.4.4 Low Power Bit Usage 143
9.4.5 DCO Maximum Frequency with 32.768 kHz Oscillator 143
9.4.6 Internal Reference Clock 143
9.4.7 External Reference Clock 144
9.4.8 Fixed Frequency Clock 144
9.4.9 Local Clock 144

Chapter 10
Serial Communications Interface (S08SCIV4)

10.1 Introduction 145
10.1.1 Features 146
10.1.2 Modes of Operation 146
10.1.3 Block Diagram 147
10.2 Register Definition 149
10.2.1 SCI Baud Rate Registers (SCIxBDH, SCIxBDL) 149
10.2.2 SCI Control Register 1 (SCIxC1) 150
10.2.3 SCI Control Register 2 (SCIxC2) 151
10.2.4 SCI Status Register 1 (SCIxS1) 152
10.2.5 SCI Status Register 2 (SCIxS2) 154
10.2.6 SCI Control Register 3 (SCIxC3) 155
10.2.7 SCI Data Register (SCIxD) 156
10.3 Functional Description 156
10.3.1 Baud Rate Generation 156
10.3.2 Transmitter Functional Description 157
10.3.3 Receiver Functional Description 158
10.3.4 Interrupts and Status Flags 160
10.3.5 Additional SCI Functions 161

Chapter 11
Timer Pulse-Width Modulator (S08TPMV3)

11.1 Introduction 163
11.1.1 TPM Configuration Information 163
11.1.2 Features 165
11.1.3 Modes of Operation 165
11.1.4 Block Diagram 166
11.2 Signal Description 168

Section Number	Title	Page

11.2.1 Detailed Signal Descriptions 168
11.3 Register Definition 171
11.3.1 TPM Status and Control Register (TPMxSC) 171
11.3.2 TPM-Counter Registers (TPMxCNTH:TPMxCNTL). 172
11.3.3 TPM Counter Modulo Registers (TPMxMODH:TPMxMODL). 173
11.3.4 TPM Channel n Status and Control Register (TPMxCnSC) 174
11.3.5 TPM Channel Value Registers (TPMxCnVH:TPMxCnVL) 175
11.4 Functional Description 176
11.4.1 Counter. 177
11.4.2 Channel Mode Selection 178
11.5 Reset Overview 181
11.5.1 General. 181
11.5.2 Description of Reset Operation 181
11.6 Interrupts 181
11.6.1 General. 181
11.6.2 Description of Interrupt Operation 182

Chapter 12
Development Support

12.1 Introduction 184
12.1.1 Forcing Active Background. 184
12.1.2 Module Configuration 184
12.1.3 Features 185
12.2 Background Debug Controller (BDC) 185
12.2.1 BKGD Pin Description 186
12.2.2 Communication Details 186
12.2.3 BDC Commands 190
12.2.4 BDC Hardware Breakpoint 192
12.3 Register Definition 192
12.3.1 BDC Registers and Control Bits 193
12.3.2 System Background Debug Force Reset Register (SBDFR). 195

Chapter 1
Device Overview

The MC9S08SC4 is a member of the low-cost, high-performance HCS08 Family of 8-bit microcontroller units (MCUs). The MC9S08SC4 uses the enhanced HCS08 core.

1.1 Devices in the MC9S08SC4 Series

Table 1-1 summarizes the feature set available in the MC9S08SC4 MCU.

Table 1-1. MC9S08SC4 Features

Feature	9S08SC4
FLASH size (bytes)	4096
RAM size (bytes)	256
Pin quantity	16
ADC channels	8
ICS	yes
Pin Interrupts	8
Pin I/O	12
SCI	yes
TPM1 channels	2
TPM2 channels	2
XOSC	yes

1.2 MCU Block Diagram

The block diagram in Figure 1-1 shows the structure of the MC9S08SC4 MCU.

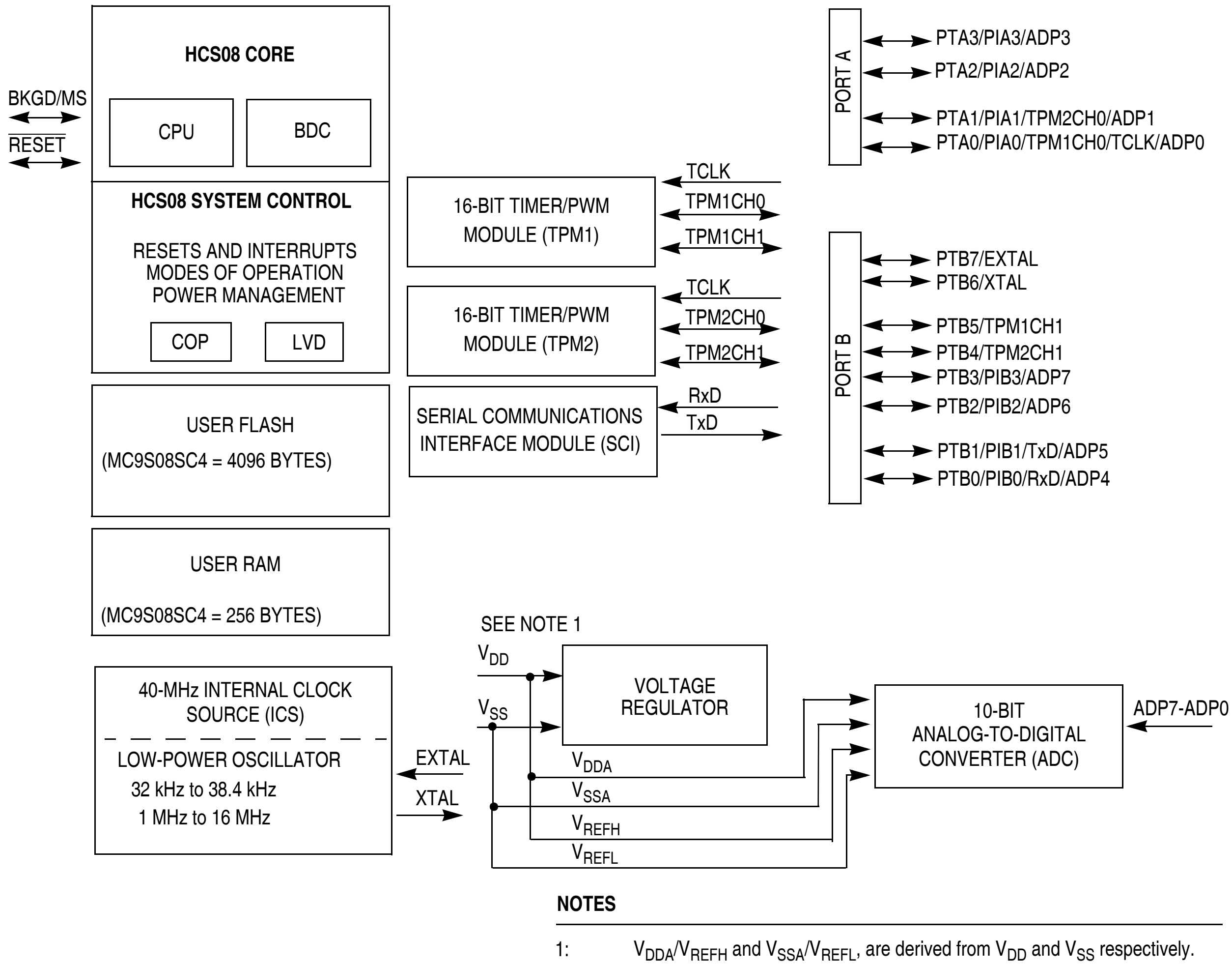


Figure 1-1. MC9S08SC4 Block Diagram

Table 1-2 provides the functional version of the on-chip modules.

Table 1-2. Module Versions

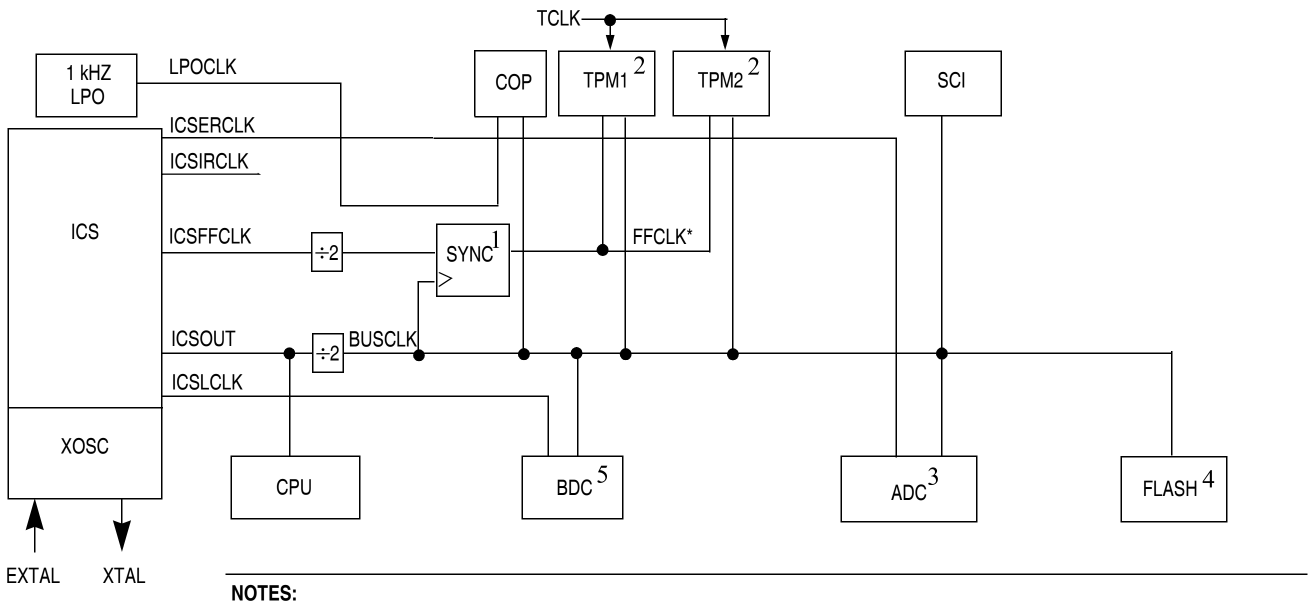
Module		Version
Analog-to-Digital Converter	(ADC)	1
Central Processor Unit	(CPU)	5
Internal Clock Source	(ICS)	3
Serial Communications Interface	(SCI)	4
Timer Pulse Width Modulator	(TPM)	3

1.3 System Clock Distribution

Figure 1-2 shows a simplified clock connection diagram. Some modules in the MCU have selectable clock inputs as shown. The clock inputs to the modules indicate the clock(s) that are used to drive the module function.

The following defines the clocks used in this MCU:

- BUSCLK — The frequency of the bus is always half of ICSOUT.
- ICSOUT — Primary output of the ICS and is twice the bus frequency.
- ICSLCLK — Development tools can select this clock source to speed up BDC communications in systems where the bus clock is configured to run at a very slow frequency.
- ICSERCLK — External reference clock can be selected as the alternate clock for the ADC module.
- ICSIRCLK — Not used.
- ICSFFCLK — Fixed frequency clock can be selected as clock source for the TPM1 and TPM2 module.
- LPOCLK — Independent 1 kHz clock source that can be selected as the clock source for the COP module.
- TCLK — External input clock source for TPM1 and TPM2 and is referenced as TPMCLK in TPM chapters.



NOTES:

1 The fixed frequency clock (FFCLK) is internally synchronized to the bus clock and must not exceed one half of the bus clock frequency.

2 TPM has minimum and maximum frequency requirements. Refer to Chapter 11, "Timer Pulse-Width Modulator (S08TPMV3)," and MC9S08SC4 datasheet for more information.

3 ADC has minimum and maximum frequency requirements.
See Chapter 8, "Analog-to-Digital Converter (S08ADCV1)," and MC9S08SC4 datasheet for more information.

4 Flash has frequency requirements for program and erase operation. Refer to MC9S08SC4 datasheet for more information.

5 BDC has minimum and maximum frequency requirements. Refer to Section 12.2, "Background Debug Controller (BDC)," for more information. Refer to Section 2.2.4, "Background / Mode Select (BKGD/MS)," for information regarding ICSLCLK <= BUSCLK.

Figure 1-2. System Clock Distribution Diagram

Chapter 2
Pins and Connections

This section describes signals that connect to package pins. It includes pinout diagrams, recommended system connections, and detailed discussions of signals.

2.1 Device Pin Assignment

Figure 2-1 shows the pin assignments for the MC9S08SC4 device.

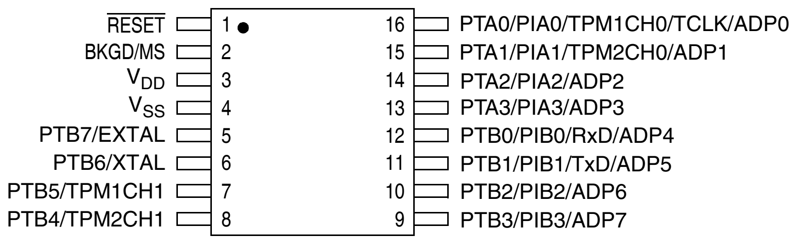
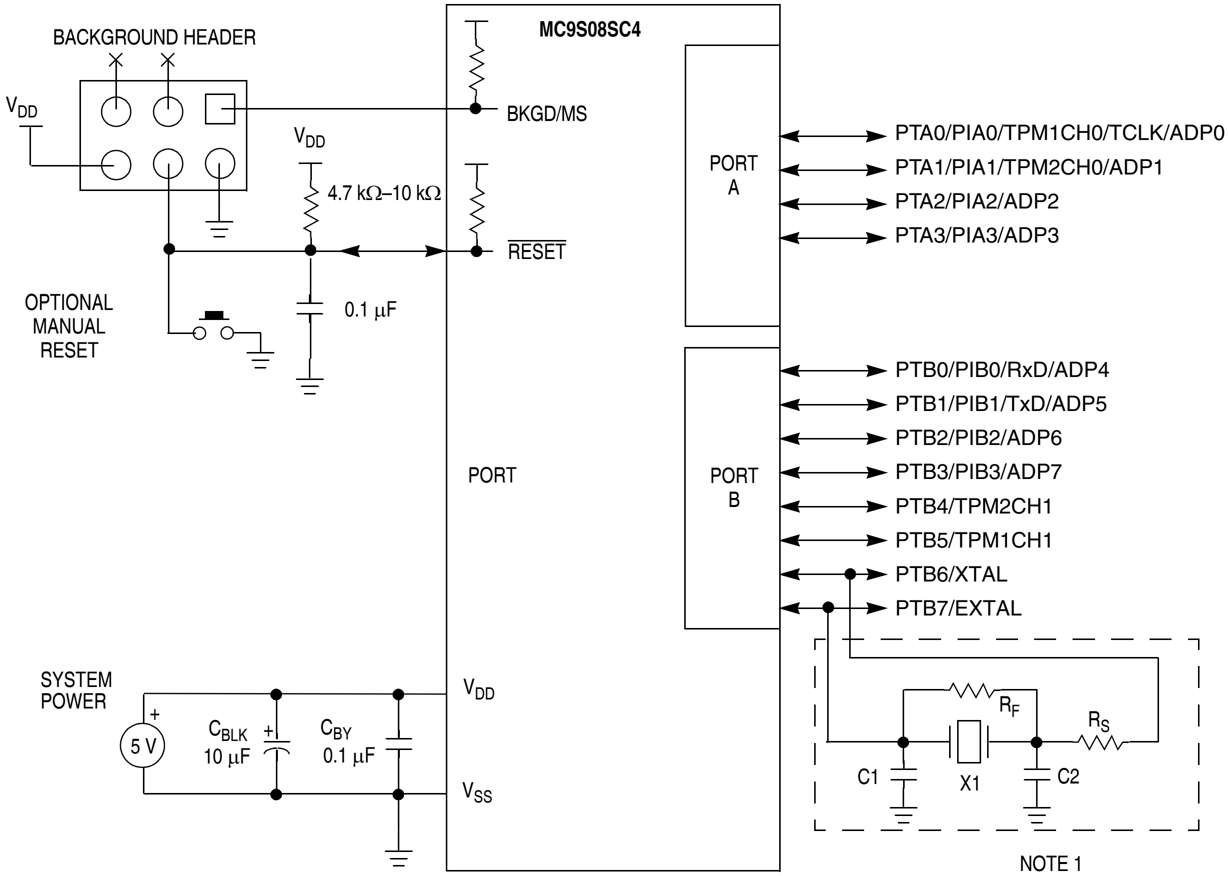


Figure 2-1. 16-Pin TSSOP

2.2 Recommended System Connections

Figure 2-2 shows pin connections that are common to MC9S08SC4 application systems.



NOTES:

1. External crystal circuit not required if using the internal clock option.
2. RESET pin can only be used to reset into user mode, you can not enter BDM using RESET pin. BDM can be entered by holding MS low during POR or writing a 1 to BDFR in SBDFR with MS low after issuing BDM command.
3. RC filter on RESET pin recommended for noisy environments.

Figure 2-2. Basic System Connections

2.2.1 Power

V_{DD} and V_{SS} are the primary power supply pins for the MCU. This voltage source supplies power to all I/O buffer circuitry and ADC modules, and to an internal voltage regulator. The internal voltage regulator provides regulated lower-voltage source to the CPU and other internal circuitry of the MCU.

Typically, application systems have two separate capacitors across the power pins. In this case, there should be a bulk electrolytic capacitor (C_{BLK}), such as a 10 µF tantalum capacitor, to provide bulk charge storage for the overall system and a 0.1 µF ceramic bypass capacitor (C_{BY}) located as near to the MCU power pins as practical to suppress high-frequency noise. Each pin must have a bypass capacitor for best noise suppression. Refer to Figure 2-2 for an example of the implementation of the C_{BLK} and C_{BY} capacitors.

2.2.2 Oscillator (XOSC)

Immediately after reset, the MCU uses an internally generated clock provided by the clock source generator (ICS) module. For more information on the ICS, see Chapter 9, "Internal Clock Source (S08ICSV3)."

The oscillator (XOSC) in this MCU is a Pierce oscillator that can accommodate a crystal or ceramic resonator. Rather than a crystal or ceramic resonator, an external oscillator can be connected to the EXTAL input pin.

Refer to Figure 2-2 for the following discussion. R_S (when used) and R_F should be low-inductance resistors such as carbon composition resistors. Wire-wound resistors, and some metal film resistors, have too much inductance. C1 and C2 normally should be high-quality ceramic capacitors that are specifically designed for high-frequency applications.

R_F is used to provide a bias path to keep the EXTAL input in its linear range during crystal startup; its value is not generally critical. Typical systems use 1 MΩ to 10 MΩ. Higher values are sensitive to humidity and lower values reduce gain and (in extreme cases) could prevent startup.

C1 and C2 are typically in the 5 pF to 25 pF range and are chosen to match the requirements of a specific crystal or resonator. Be sure to take into account printed circuit board (PCB) capacitance and MCU pin capacitance when selecting C1 and C2. The crystal manufacturer typically specifies a load capacitance which is the series combination of C1 and C2 (which are usually the same size). As a first-order approximation, use 10 pF as an estimate of combined pin and PCB capacitance for each oscillator pin (EXTAL and XTAL).

2.2.3 $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ Pin

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$ is a dedicated pin with open-drain drive containing an internal pull-up device. Internal power-on reset and low-voltage reset circuitry typically make external reset circuitry unnecessary. This pin is normally connected to the standard 6-pin background debug connector so a development system can directly reset the MCU system. If desired, a manual external reset can be added by supplying a simple switch to ground (pull reset pin low to force a reset).

Whenever any reset is initiated (whether from an external signal or from an internal system), the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin is driven low for about 66 bus cycles. The reset circuitry decodes the cause of reset and records it by setting a corresponding bit in the system reset status register (SRS).

NOTE

- This pin does not contain a clamp diode to V_{DD} and should not be driven above V_{DD}.
- The voltage measured on the internally pulled up $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin will not be pulled to V_{DD}. The internal gates connected to this pin are pulled to V_{DD}. If the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin is required to drive to a V_{DD} level an external pull-up should be used.

- In EMC-sensitive applications, an external RC filter is recommended on the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$. See Figure 2-2 for an example.

2.2.4 Background / Mode Select (BKGD/MS)

During a POR or background debug force reset (see Section 5.7.2, "System Background Debug Force Reset Register (SBDFR)," for more information), the BKGD/MS pin functions as a mode select pin. Immediately after any reset, the pin functions as the background pin and can be used for background debug communication. The BKGD/MS pin contains an internal pull-up device.

If nothing is connected to this pin, the MCU enters Run mode at the rising edge of the internal reset after a POR or force BDC reset. If a debug system is connected to the 6-pin standard background debug header, it can hold BKGD/MS low during POR or immediately after issuing a background debug force reset, which will force the MCU to active background mode.

NOTE

A resistive or capacitive load on the BKGD/MS pin could cause the MCU to enter active background mode on a POR if the pin voltage rises slower than V_{DD}.

The BKGD pin is used primarily for background debug controller (BDC) communications using a custom protocol that uses 16 clock cycles of the target MCU's BDC clock per bit time. The target MCU's BDC clock could be as fast as the maximum bus clock rate, so there must never be any significant capacitance connected to the BKGD/MS pin that could interfere with background serial communications.

Although the BKGD pin is a pseudo open-drain pin, the background debug communication protocol provides brief, actively driven, high speedup pulses to ensure fast rise times. Small capacitances from cables and the absolute value of the internal pull-up device play almost no role in determining rise and fall times on the BKGD pin.

2.2.5 General-Purpose I/O and Peripheral Ports

The MC9S08SC4 MCU supports 12 general-purpose I/O pins which are shared with on-chip peripheral functions (timers, serial I/O, ADC, and so forth).

When a port pin is configured as a general-purpose output or a peripheral uses the port pin as an output, software can select one of two drive strengths and enable or disable slew rate control. When a port pin is configured as a general-purpose input or a peripheral uses the port pin as an input, software can enable a pull-up device. Immediately after reset, all of these pins are configured as high-impedance general-purpose inputs with internal pull-up devices disabled.

When an on-chip peripheral system is controlling a pin, data direction control bits still determine what is read from port data registers even though the peripheral module controls the pin direction by controlling the enable for the pin's output buffer. For information about controlling these pins as general-purpose I/O pins, see Chapter 6, "Parallel Input/Output Control."

NOTE

To avoid extra current drain from floating input pins, the reset initialization routine in the application program should either enable on-chip pull-up devices or change the direction of unused pins to outputs so they do not float

Table 2-1. Pin Function Priority

Pin Number	Priority Lowest ← → Highest				
16-pin	**Port Pin**	**Alt 1**	**Alt 2**	**Alt 3**	**Alt 4**
1					$\overline{\text{RESET}}$
2				BKGD	MS
3					V_{DD}
4					V_{SS}
5	PTB7		EXTAL		
6	PTB6		XTAL		
7	PTB5	TPM1CH1			
8	PTB4	TPM2CH1			
9	PTB3	PIB3			ADP7
10	PTB2	PIB2			ADP6
11	PTB1	PIB1	TxD		ADP5
12	PTB0	PIB0	RxD		ADP4
13	PTA3	PIA3			ADP3
14	PTA2	PIA2			ADP2
15	PTA1	PIA1	TPM2CH0		ADP1
16	PTA0	PIA0	TPM1CH0	TCLK	ADP0

Chapter 3
Modes of Operation

3.1 Introduction

The operating modes of the MC9S08SC4 are described in this chapter. Entry into each mode, exit from each mode, and functionality while in each of the modes are described.

3.2 Features

- Active background mode for code development
- Wait mode — CPU shuts down to conserve power; system clocks are running and full regulation is maintained
- Stop modes — System clocks are stopped and voltage regulator is in standby
  - Stop3 — All internal circuits are powered for fast recovery
  - Stop2 — Partial power down of internal circuits, RAM content is retained, I/O states held

3.3 Run Mode

This is the normal operating mode for the MC9S08SC4. This mode is selected upon the MCU exiting reset if the BKGD/MS pin is high. In this mode, the CPU executes code from internal memory with execution beginning at the address fetched from memory at 0xFFFE–0xFFFF after reset.

3.4 Active Background Mode

The active background mode functions are managed through the background debug controller (BDC) in the HCS08 core. The BDC provides the means for analyzing MCU operation during software development.

Active background mode is entered in any of the following ways:

- When the BKGD/MS pin is low when exiting POR condition or immediately after issuing a background debug force reset (see Section 5.7.2, "System Background Debug Force Reset Register (SBDFR)")
- When a BACKGROUND command is received through the BKGD/MS pin
- When a BGND instruction is executed
- When encountering a BDC breakpoint

After entering active background mode, the CPU is held in a suspended state waiting for serial background commands rather than executing instructions from the user application program.

Background commands are of two types:

- Non-intrusive commands, defined as commands that can be issued while the user program is running. Non-intrusive commands can be issued through the BKGD/MS pin while the MCU is in run mode; non-intrusive commands can also be executed when the MCU is in the active background mode. Non-intrusive commands include:
  — Memory access commands
  — Memory-access-with-status commands
  — BDC register access commands
  — The BACKGROUND command
- Active background commands, which can only be executed while the MCU is in active background mode. Active background commands include commands to:
  — Read or write CPU registers
  — Trace one user program instruction at a time
  — Leave active background mode to return to the user application program (GO)

The active background mode is used to program a bootloader or user application program into the FLASH program memory before the MCU is operated in run mode for the first time. When the MC9S08SC4 is shipped from the Freescale Semiconductor factory, the FLASH program memory is erased by default unless specifically noted so there is no program that could be executed in run mode until the FLASH memory is initially programmed. The active background mode can also be used to erase and reprogram the FLASH memory after it has been previously programmed.

For additional information about the active background mode, refer to Chapter 12, "Development Support."

3.5 Wait Mode

Wait mode is entered by executing a WAIT instruction. Upon execution of the WAIT instruction, the CPU enters a low-power state in which it is not clocked. The I bit in CCR is cleared when the CPU enters the wait mode, enabling interrupts. When an interrupt request occurs, the CPU exits the wait mode and resumes processing, beginning with the stacking operations leading to the interrupt service routine.

While the MCU is in wait mode, there are some restrictions on which background debug commands can be used. Only the BACKGROUND command and memory-access-with-status commands are available when the MCU is in wait mode. The memory-access-with-status commands do not allow memory access, but they report an error indicating that the MCU is in either stop or wait mode. The BACKGROUND command can be used to wake the MCU from wait mode and enter active background mode.

3.6 Stop Modes

One of two stop modes is entered upon execution of a STOP instruction when STOPE bit in SOPT1 is set. In any stop mode, the bus and CPU clocks are halted. The ICS module can be configured to leave the reference clocks running. See Chapter 9, "Internal Clock Source (S08ICSV3)," for more information.

If the STOPE bit is not set when the CPU executes a STOP instruction, the MCU does not enter either stop mode and an illegal opcode reset is forced. Set the appropriate bits in the System Power Management Status and Control 2 register (SPMSC2) to select the stop mode.

Table 3-1 shows all of the control bits that affect stop mode selection and the mode selected under various conditions. The selected mode is entered following the execution of a STOP instruction.

Table 3-1. Stop Mode Selection

Register	SOPT1	BDCSCR	SPMSC1		SPMSC2	Stop Mode
Bit Name	STOPE	ENBDM [1]	LVDE	LVDSE	PPDC	
	0	x	x		x	Stop modes disabled; illegal opcode reset if STOP instruction executed
	1	1	x		x	Stop3 with BDM enabled [2]
	1	0	Both bits must be 1		0	Stop3 with voltage regulator active
	1	0	Either bit a 0		0	Stop3
	1	0	Either bit a 0		1	Stop2

[1] ENBDM is located in the BDCSCR, which is only accessible through BDC commands, see Section 12.2, "Background Debug Controller (BDC)."

[2] When in Stop3 mode with BDM enabled, The $S3_{IDD}$ will be near R_{IDD} levels because internal clocks are enabled. See MC9S08SC4 datasheet for more information.

3.6.1 Stop3 Mode

Stop3 mode is entered by executing a STOP instruction under the conditions as shown in Table 3-1. The states of all of the internal registers and logic, RAM contents, and I/O pin states are maintained.

Stop3 can be exited by asserting $\overline{\text{RESET}}$, or by an interrupt from one of the following sources: LVD system, ADC, SCI, or any pin interrupts.

If stop3 is exited by means of the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin, then the MCU is reset and operation will resume after taking the reset vector. Exit by means of one of the internal interrupt sources results in the MCU taking the appropriate interrupt vector.

3.6.1.1 LVD Enabled in Stop3 Mode

The LVD system is capable of generating either an interrupt or a reset when the supply voltage drops below the LVD voltage. For configuring the LVD system for interrupt or reset, refer to Section 5.6, "Low-Voltage Detect (LVD) System." If the LVD is enabled (LVDE and LVDSE bits in SPMSC1 both set) at the time the CPU executes a STOP instruction, then the voltage regulator remains active during stop3 mode. If you attempt to enter stop2 with LVD enabled for stop, the MCU enters stop3 instead.

For the ADC to operate in stop mode, the LVD must be enabled when entering stop3.

3.6.1.2 Active BDM Enabled in Stop3 Mode

Entry into the active background mode from run mode is enabled if ENBDM in BDCSCR is set. This register is described in Chapter 12, “Development Support.” If ENBDM is set when the CPU executes a STOP instruction, the system clocks to the background debug logic remain active when the MCU enters stop3 mode. Because of this, background debug communication remains possible. In addition, the voltage regulator does not enter its low-power standby state but maintains full internal regulation. If you attempt to enter stop2 with ENBDM set, the MCU enters stop3 instead.

Most background commands are not available in stop3 mode. The memory-access-with-status commands do not allow memory access, but they report an error indicating that the MCU is in either stop or wait mode. The BACKGROUND command can be used to wake the MCU from stop3 and enter active background mode if the ENBDM bit is set. After entering background debug mode, all background commands are available.

3.6.2 Stop2 Mode

Stop2 mode is entered by executing a STOP instruction under the conditions as shown in Table 3-1. Most of the internal circuitry of the MCU is powered off in stop2 with the exception of the RAM. Upon entering stop2, all I/O pin control signals are latched so that the pins retain their states during stop2.

Exit from stop2 is performed by asserting the wake-up pin ($\overline{\text{RESET}}$) on the MCU.

Upon wake-up from stop2 mode, the MCU starts up as from a power-on reset (POR):

- All module control and status registers are reset
- The LVD reset function is enabled and the MCU remains in the reset state if V_{DD} is below the LVD trip point (low trip point selected due to POR)
- The CPU takes the reset vector

In addition to the above, upon waking up from stop2, the PPDF bit in SPMSC2 is set. This flag is used to direct user code to go to a stop2 recovery routine. PPDF remains set and the I/O pin states remain latched until a 1 is written to PPDACK in SPMSC2.

To maintain I/O states for pins that were configured as general-purpose I/O before entering stop2, the user must restore the contents of the I/O port registers, which have been saved in RAM, to the port registers before writing to the PPDACK bit. If the port registers are not restored from RAM before writing to PPDACK, then the pins will switch to their reset states when PPDACK is written.

For pins that were configured as peripheral I/O, the user must reconfigure the peripheral module that interfaces to the pin before writing to the PPDACK bit. If the peripheral module is not enabled before writing to PPDACK, the pins will be controlled by their associated port control registers when the I/O latches are opened.

3.6.3 On-Chip Peripheral Modules in Stop Modes

When the MCU enters any stop mode, system clocks to the internal peripheral modules are stopped. Even in the exception case (ENBDM = 1), where clocks to the background debug logic continue to operate, clocks to the peripheral systems are halted to reduce power consumption. Refer to Section 3.6.2, "Stop2 Mode," and Section 3.6.1, "Stop3 Mode," for specific information on system behavior in stop modes.

Table 3-2. Stop Mode Behavior

Peripheral	Mode	
	Stop2	Stop3
CPU	Off	Standby
RAM	Standby	Standby
FLASH	Off	Standby
Parallel Port Registers	Off	Standby
ADC	Off	Optionally On[1]
BDM	Off[2]	Optionally On
ICS	Off	Optionally On[3]
LVD/LVW	Off[4]	Optionally On
SCI	Off	Standby
TPM	Off	Standby
Voltage Regulator	Standby	Optionally On[5]
XOSC	Off	Optionally On[6]
I/O Pins	States Held	States Held

1 Requires the asynchronous ADC clock and LVD to be enabled, else in standby. LVD must be enabled to run in stop if converting the bandgap channel.

2 If ENBDM is set when entering stop2, the MCU will actually enter stop3.

3 IRCLKEN and IREFSTEN set in ICSC1, else in standby.

4 If LVDSE is set when entering stop2, the MCU will actually enter stop3.

5 Voltage regulator will be on if BDM is enabled or if LVD is enabled when entering stop3.

6 ERCLKEN and EREFSTEN set in ICSC2, else in standby. For high frequency range (RANGE in ICSC2 set) requires the LVD to also be enabled in stop3.

Chapter 4
Memory

4.1 MC9S08SC4 Memory Map

As shown in Figure 4-1, on-chip memory in the MC9S08SC4 MCU consists of RAM, FLASH program memory for nonvolatile data storage, and I/O and control/status registers. The registers are divided into three groups:

- Direct-page registers (0x0000 through 0x007F)
- High-page registers (0x1800 through 0x185F)
- Nonvolatile registers (0xFFB0 through 0xFFBF)

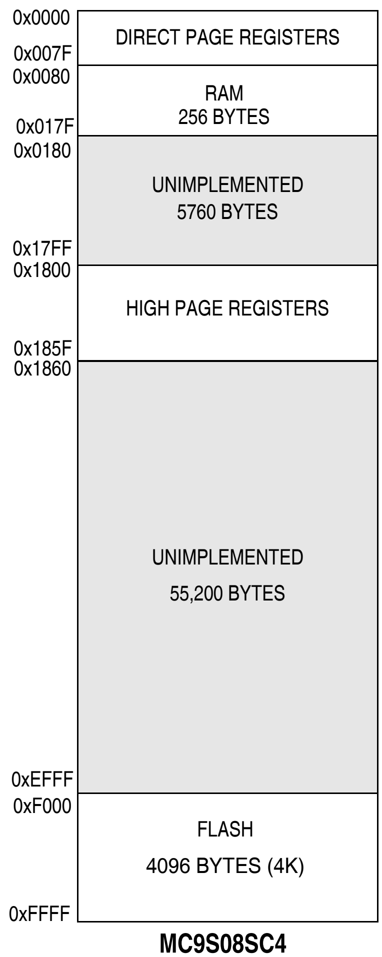


Figure 4-1. MC9S08SC4 Memory Map

4.2 Reset and Interrupt Vector Assignments

Table 4-1 shows address assignments for reset and interrupt vectors. The vector names shown in this table are the labels used in the Freescale Semiconductor provided equate file for the MC9S08SC4.

Table 4-1. Reset and Interrupt Vectors

Address (High/Low)	Vector	Vector Name
0xFFC0:0xFFC1	Reserved	—
0xFFC2:0xFFC3	Reserved	—
0xFFC4:0xFFC5	Reserved	—
0xFFC6:0xFFC7	Reserved	—
0xFFC8:0xFFC9	Reserved	—
0xFFCA:0xFFCB	Reserved	—
0xFFCC:0xFFCD	Reserved	—
0xFFCE:0xFFCF	Reserved	—
0xFFD0:0xFFD1	ADC Conversion	Vadc
0xFFD2:0xFFD3	Reserved	—
0xFFD4:0xFFD5	Port B Pin Interrupt	Vportb
0xFFD6:0xFFD7	Port A Pin Interrupt	Vporta
0xFFD8:0xFFD9	Reserved	—
0xFFDA:0xFFDB	SCI Transmit	Vscitx
0xFFDC:0xFFDD	SCI Receive	Vscirx
0xFFDE:0xFFDF	SCI Error	Vscierr
0xFFE0:0xFFE1	Reserved	—
0xFFE2:0xFFE3	TPM2 Overflow	Vtpm2ovf
0xFFE4:0xFFE5	TPM2 Channel 1	Vtpm2ch1
0xFFE6:0xFFE7	TPM2 Channel 0	Vtpm2ch0
0xFFE8:0xFFE9	TPM1 Overflow	Vtpm1ovf
0xFFEA:0xFFEB	Reserved	—
0xFFEC:0xFFED	Reserved	—
0xFFEE:0xFFEF	Reserved	—
0xFFF0:0xFFF1	Reserved	—
0xFFF2:0xFFF3	TPM1 Channel 1	Vtpm1ch1
0xFFF4:0xFFF5	TPM1 Channel 0	Vtpm1ch0
0xFFF6:0xFFF7	Reserved	—
0xFFF8:0xFFF9	Low Voltage Detect	Vlvd
0xFFFA:0xFFFB	Reserved	—
0xFFFC:0xFFFD	SWI	Vswi
0xFFFE:0xFFFF	Reset	Vreset

4.3 Register Addresses and Bit Assignments

The registers in the MC9S08SC4 are divided into these groups:

- Direct-page registers are located in the first 128 locations in the memory map; these are accessible with efficient direct addressing mode instructions.
- High-page registers are used much less often, so they are located above 0x1800 in the memory map. This leaves more room in the direct page for more frequently used registers and RAM.
- The nonvolatile register area consists of a block of 16 locations in FLASH memory at 0xFFB0–0xFFBF. Nonvolatile register locations include:
  - — NVPROT and NVOPT are loaded into working registers at reset
  - — An 8-byte backdoor comparison key that optionally allows a user to gain controlled access to secure memory

  Because the nonvolatile register locations are FLASH memory, they must be erased and programmed like other FLASH memory locations.

Direct-page registers can be accessed with efficient direct addressing mode instructions. Bit manipulation instructions can be used to access any bit in any direct-page register. Table 4-2 is a summary of all user-accessible direct-page registers and control bits.

The direct page registers in Table 4-2 can use the more efficient direct addressing mode, which requires only the lower byte of the address. Because of this, the lower byte of the address in column one is shown in bold text. In Table 4-3 and Table 4-4, the whole address in column one is shown in bold. In Table 4-2, Table 4-3, and Table 4-4, the register names in column two are shown in bold to set them apart from the bit names to the right. Cells that are not associated with named bits are shaded. A shaded cell with a 0 indicates this unused bit always reads as a 0. Shaded cells with dashes indicate unused or reserved bit locations that could read as 1s or 0s. When writing to these bits, write a 0 unless otherwise specified.

Table 4-2. Direct-Page Register Summary (Sheet 1 of 2)

Address	Register Name	Bit 7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Bit 0
0x0000	PTAD	0	0	—	—	PTAD3	PTAD2	PTAD1	PTAD0
0x0001	PTADD	0	0	—	—	PTADD3	PTADD2	PTADD1	PTADD0
0x0002	PTBD	PTBD7	PTBD6	PTBD5	PTBD4	PTBD3	PTBD2	PTBD1	PTBD0
0x0003	PTBDD	PTBDD7	PTBDD6	PTBDD5	PTBDD4	PTBDD3	PTBDD2	PTBDD1	PTBDD0
0x0004– 0x000F	Reserved	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —
0x0010	ADCSC1	COCO	AIEN	ADCO	ADCH				
0x0011	ADCSC2	ADACT	ADTRG	ACFE	ACFGT	—	—	0	0
0x0012	ADCRH	0	0	0	0	0	0	ADR9	ADR8
0x0013	ADCRL	ADR7	ADR6	ADR5	ADR4	ADR3	ADR2	ADR1	ADR0
0x0014	ADCCVH	0	0	0	0	0	0	ADCV9	ADCV8
0x0015	ADCCVL	ADCV7	ADCV6	ADCV5	ADCV4	ADCV3	ADCV2	ADCV1	ADCV0
0x0016	ADCCFG	ADLPC	ADIV		ADLSMP	MODE		ADICLK	
0x0017	APCTL1	ADPC7	ADPC6	ADPC5	ADPC4	ADPC3	ADPC2	ADPC1	ADPC0
0x0018	APCTL2	ADPC15	ADPC14	ADPC13	ADPC12	ADPC11	ADPC10	ADPC9	ADPC8
0x0019– 0x001F	Reserved	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —
0x0020	TPM1SC	TOF	TOIE	CPWMS	CLKSB	CLKSA	PS2	PS1	PS0
0x0021	TPM1CNTH	Bit 15	14	13	12	11	10	9	Bit 8
0x0022	TPM1CNTL	Bit 7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Bit 0
0x0023	TPM1MODH	Bit 15	14	13	12	11	10	9	Bit 8
0x0024	TPM1MODL	Bit 7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Bit 0
0x0025	TPM1C0SC	CH0F	CH0IE	MS0B	MS0A	ELS0B	ELS0A	0	0
0x0026	TPM1C0VH	Bit 15	14	13	12	11	10	9	Bit 8
0x0027	TPM1C0VL	Bit 7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Bit 0
0x0028	TPM1C1SC	CH1F	CH1IE	MS1B	MS1A	ELS1B	ELS1A	0	0
0x0029	TPM1C1VH	Bit 15	14	13	12	11	10	9	Bit 8
0x002A	TPM1C1VL	Bit 7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Bit 0
0x002B– 0x0037	Reserved	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —
0x0038	SCIBDH	LBKDIE	RXEDGIE	0	SBR12	SBR11	SBR10	SBR9	SBR8
0x0039	SCIBDL	SBR7	SBR6	SBR5	SBR4	SBR3	SBR2	SBR1	SBR0
0x003A	SCIC1	LOOPS	SCISWAI	RSRC	M	WAKE	ILT	PE	PT
0x003B	SCIC2	TIE	TCIE	RIE	ILIE	TE	RE	RWU	SBK
0x003C	SCIS1	TDRE	TC	RDRF	IDLE	OR	NF	FE	PF
0x003D	SCIS2	LBKDIF	RXEDGIF	0	RXINV	RWUID	BRK13	LBKDE	RAF
0x003E	SCIC3	R8	T8	TXDIR	TXINV	ORIE	NEIE	FEIE	PEIE
0x003F	SCID	Bit 7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Bit 0
0x0040– 0x0047	Reserved	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —

Table 4-2. Direct-Page Register Summary (Sheet 2 of 2)

Address	Register Name	Bit 7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Bit 0
0x0048	ICSC1	CLKS		RDIV			IREFS	IRCLKEN	IREFSTEN
0x0049	ICSC2	BDIV		RANGE	HGO	LP	EREFS	ERCLKEN	EREFSTEN
0x004A	ICSTRM	TRIM							
0x004B	ICSSC	DRST		DMX32	IREFST	CLKST		OSCINIT	FTRIM
0x004C– 0x005F	Reserved	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —
0x0060	TPM2SC	TOF	TOIE	CPWMS	CLKSB	CLKSA	PS2	PS1	PS0
0x0061	TPM2CNTH	Bit 15	14	13	12	11	10	9	Bit 8
0x0062	TPM2CNTL	Bit 7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Bit 0
0x0063	TPM2MODH	Bit 15	14	13	12	11	10	9	Bit 8
0x0064	TPM2MODL	Bit 7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Bit 0
0x0065	TPM2C0SC	CH0F	CH0IE	MS0B	MS0A	ELS0B	ELS0A	0	0
0x0066	TPM2C0VH	Bit 15	14	13	12	11	10	9	Bit 8
0x0067	TPM2C0VL	Bit 7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Bit 0
0x0068	TPM2C1SC	CH1F	CH1IE	MS1B	MS1A	ELS1B	ELS1A	0	0
0x0069	TPM2C1VH	Bit 15	14	13	12	11	10	9	Bit 8
0x006A	TPM2C1VL	Bit 7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Bit 0
0x006B - 0x007F	Reserved	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —

High-page registers, shown in Table 4-3, are accessed much less often than other I/O and control registers so they have been located outside the direct addressable memory space, starting at 0x1800.

Table 4-3. High-Page Register Summary (Sheet 1 of 2)

Address	Register Name	Bit 7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Bit 0
0x1800	SRS	POR	PIN	COP	ILOP	ILAD	0	LVD	0
0x1801	SBDFR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	BDFR
0x1802	SOPT1	COPT		STOPE	0	0	0	0	0
0x1803	SOPT2	COPCLKS	COPW	0	0	0	0	0	0
0x1804 – 0x1805	Reserved	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —
0x1806	SDIDH	1	—	—	—	ID11	ID10	ID9	ID8
0x1807	SDIDL	ID7	ID6	ID5	ID4	ID3	ID2	ID1	ID0
0x1808	Reserved	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
0x1809	SPMSC1	LVWF	LVWACK	LVWIE	LVDRE	LVDSE	LVDE	0	BGBE
0x180A	SPMSC2	0	0	LVDV	LVWV	PPDF	PPDACK	0	PPDC
0x180B– 0x181F	Reserved	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —
0x1820	FCDIV	DIVLD	PRDIV8	DIV					
0x1821	FOPT	KEYEN	FNORED	0	0	0	0	SEC	
0x1822	Reserved	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
0x1823	FCNFG	0	0	KEYACC	0	0	0	0	0
0x1824	FPROT	FPS							FPDIS
0x1825	FSTAT	FCBEF	FCCF	FPVIOL	FACCERR	0	FBLANK	0	0
0x1826	FCMD	FCMD							
0x1827– 0x183F	Reserved	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —
0x1840	PTAPE	0	0	—	—	PTAPE3	PTAPE2	PTAPE1	PTAPE0
0x1841	PTASE	0	0	—	—	PTASE3	PTASE2	PTASE1	PTASE0
0x1842	PTADS	0	0	—	—	PTADS3	PTADS2	PTADS1	PTADS0
0x1843	Reserved	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
0x1844	PTASC	0	0	0	0	PTAIF	PTAACK	PTAIE	PTAMOD
0x1845	PTAPS	0	0	0	0	PTAPS3	PTAPS2	PTAPS1	PTAPS0
0x1846	PTAES	0	0	0	0	PTAES3	PTAES2	PTAES1	PTAES0
0x1847	Reserved	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
0x1848	PTBPE	PTBPE7	PTBPE6	PTBPE5	PTBPE4	PTBPE3	PTBPE2	PTBPE1	PTBPE0
0x1849	PTBSE	PTBSE7	PTBSE6	PTBSE5	PTBSE4	PTBSE3	PTBSE2	PTBSE1	PTBSE0
0x184A	PTBDS	PTBDS7	PTBDS6	PTBDS5	PTBDS4	PTBDS3	PTBDS2	PTBDS1	PTBDS0
0x184B	Reserved	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
0x184C	PTBSC	0	0	0	0	PTBIF	PTBACK	PTBIE	PTBMOD
0x184D	PTBPS	0	0	0	0	PTBPS3	PTBPS2	PTBPS1	PTBPS0

Table 4-3. High-Page Register Summary (Sheet 2 of 2)

Address	Register Name	Bit 7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Bit 0
0x184E	**PTBES**	0	0	0	0	PTBES3	PTBES2	PTBES1	PTBES0
0x184F–0x185F	Reserved	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —

Nonvolatile FLASH registers, shown in Table 4-4, are located in the FLASH memory. These registers include an 8-byte backdoor key, NVBACKKEY, which can be used to gain access to secure memory resources. During reset events, the contents of NVPROT and NVOPT in the nonvolatile register area of the FLASH memory are transferred into corresponding FPROT and FOPT working registers in the high-page registers to control security and block protection options.

The factory ICS trim value is stored in the IFR and loaded into the ICSTRM and ICSSC registers after any reset. The internal reference trim values stored in flash, TRIM, and FTRIM, can be programmed by third party programmers and must be copied into the corresponding ICS registers by user code to override the factory trim.

Table 4-4. Nonvolatile Register Summary

<table>
<tr><th>Address</th><th>Register Name</th><th>Bit 7</th><th>6</th><th>5</th><th>4</th><th>3</th><th>2</th><th>1</th><th>Bit 0</th></tr>
<tr><td>0xFFAE</td><td>Reserved for storage of FTRIM</td><td>—</td><td>—</td><td>—</td><td>—</td><td>—</td><td>—</td><td>—</td><td>FTRIM</td></tr>
<tr><td>0xFFAF</td><td>Reserved for storage of ICSTRM</td><td colspan="8">TRIM</td></tr>
<tr><td>0xFFB0 – 0xFFB7</td><td>NVBACKKEY</td><td colspan="8">8-Byte Comparison Key</td></tr>
<tr><td>0xFFB8 – 0xFFBC</td><td>Reserved</td><td>—
—</td><td>—
—</td><td>—
—</td><td>—
—</td><td>—
—</td><td>—
—</td><td>—
—</td><td>—
—</td></tr>
<tr><td>0xFFBD</td><td>NVPROT</td><td colspan="7">FPS</td><td>FPDIS</td></tr>
<tr><td>0xFFBE</td><td>Reserved</td><td>—</td><td>—</td><td>—</td><td>—</td><td>—</td><td>—</td><td>—</td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>0xFFBF</td><td>NVOPT</td><td>KEYEN</td><td>FNORED</td><td>—</td><td>—</td><td>—</td><td>—</td><td colspan="2">SEC</td></tr>
</table>

NOTE

Values in the following locations are programmed at the factory:

- FTRIM and TRIM (Value dependent upon trim test results)
- KEYEN (value 1)
- FNORED (value 1)
- SEC (value 1:0)

Additionally, on certain custom part numbers that may have customer-specific code programmed at the factory, the values programmed in these locations may be different and values may also be programmed in NVBACKKEY (8-byte comparison key) and NVPROT[FPS:FPDIS].

Provided the key enable (KEYEN) bit is 1, the 8-byte comparison key can be used to temporarily disengage memory security. This key mechanism can be accessed only through user code running in secure memory. (A security key cannot be entered directly through background debug commands.) This security key can be disabled completely by programming the KEYEN bit to 0. If the security key is disabled, the only way to disengage security is by mass erasing the FLASH if needed (normally through the background debug interface) and verifying that FLASH is blank. To avoid returning to secure mode after the next reset, program the security bits (SEC) to the unsecured state (1:0).

4.4 RAM

The MC9S08SC4 includes static RAM. The locations in RAM below 0x0100 can be accessed using the more efficient direct addressing mode, and any single bit in this area can be accessed with the bit manipulation instructions (BCLR, BSET, BRCLR, and BRSET). Locating the most frequently accessed program variables in this area of RAM is preferred.

The RAM retains data when the MCU is in low-power wait, stop2, or stop3 mode. At power-on the contents of RAM are uninitialized. RAM data is unaffected by any reset provided that the supply voltage does not drop below the minimum value for RAM retention (V_{RAM}).

For compatibility with M68HC05 MCUs, the HCS08 resets the stack pointer to 0x00FF. In the MC9S08SC4, it is usually best to reinitialize the stack pointer to the top of the RAM so the direct page RAM can be used for frequently accessed RAM variables and bit-addressable program variables. Include the following 2-instruction sequence in your reset initialization routine (where RamLast is equated to the highest address of the RAM in the Freescale Semiconductor-provided equate file).

```
LDHX     #RamLast+1     ;point one past RAM
TXS                     ;SP<-(H:X-1)
```

When security is enabled, the RAM is considered a secure memory resource and is not accessible through BDM or through code executing from non-secure memory. See Section 4.6, "Security,” for a detailed description of the security feature.

4.5 FLASH

The FLASH memory is intended primarily for program storage. In-circuit programming allows the operating program to be loaded into the FLASH memory after final assembly of the application product. It is possible to program the entire array through the single-wire background debug interface. Because no special voltages are needed for FLASH erase and programming operations, in-application programming is also possible through other software-controlled communication paths. For a more detailed discussion of in-circuit and in-application programming, refer to the *HCS08 Family Reference Manual, Volume I,* Freescale Semiconductor document order number HCS08RMv1/D.

4.5.1 Features

Features of the FLASH memory include:

- FLASH size
  — MC9S08SC4: 4,096 bytes (8 pages of 512 bytes each)
- Single power supply program and erase
- Command interface for fast program and erase operation

- Up to 100,000 program/erase cycles at typical voltage and temperature
- Flexible block protection
- Security feature for FLASH and RAM
- Auto power-down for low-frequency read accesses

4.5.2 Program and Erase Times

Before any program or erase command can be accepted, the FLASH clock divider register (FCDIV) must be written to set the internal clock for the FLASH module to a frequency (f_{FCLK}) between 150 kHz and 200 kHz (see Section 4.7.1, "FLASH Clock Divider Register (FCDIV)"). This register can be written only once, so normally this write is done during reset initialization. FCDIV cannot be written if the access error flag, FACCERR in FSTAT, is set. The user must ensure that FACCERR is not set before writing to the FCDIV register. One period of the resulting clock ($1/f_{FCLK}$) is used by the command processor to time program and erase pulses. An integer number of these timing pulses are used by the command processor to complete a program or erase command.

Table 4-5 shows program and erase times. The bus clock frequency and FCDIV determine the frequency of FCLK (f_{FCLK}). The time for one cycle of FCLK is $t_{FCLK} = 1/f_{FCLK}$. The times are shown as a number of cycles of FCLK and as an absolute time for the case where $t_{FCLK} = 5\ \mu s$. Program and erase times shown include overhead for the command state machine and enabling and disabling of program and erase voltages.

Table 4-5. Program and Erase Times

Parameter	Cycles of FCLK	Time if FCLK = 200 kHz
Byte program	9	45 μs
Byte program (burst)	4	20 μs[1]
Page erase	4000	20 ms
Mass erase	20,000	100 ms

[1] Excluding start/end overhead

4.5.3 Flash Commands

Table 4-6 summarizes the valid flash commands along with the effects of the commands on the flash block.

Table 4-6. Flash Command Description

FCMDB	NVM Command	Function on Flash Memory
0x05	Erase Verify	Verify all memory bytes in the flash array memory are erased. If the flash array memory is erased, the FBLANK flag in the FSTAT register will set upon command completion.
0x20	Program	Program an address in the flash array.
0x25	Burst Program	Program an address in the flash array with the internal address incrementing after the program operation.
0x40	Sector Erase	Erase all memory bytes in a sector of the flash array.

Table 4-6. Flash Command Description

FCMDB	NVM Command	Function on Flash Memory
0x41	Mass Erase	Erase all memory bytes in the flash array. A mass erase of the full flash array is only possible when no protection is enabled prior to launching the command.

CAUTION

A flash block address must be in the erased state before being programmed. Cumulative programming of bits within a flash block address is not allowed except for status field updates required in EEPROM emulation applications.

4.5.3.1 Erase Verify Command

The erase verify operation will verify that a flash block is erased.

An example flow to execute the erase verify operation is shown in Figure 4-2. The erase verify command write sequence is as follows:

1. Write to a flash block address to start the command write sequence for the erase verify command. The address and data written will be ignored.
2. Write the erase verify command, 0x05, to the FCMD register.
3. Clear the FCBEF flag in the FSTAT register by writing a 1 to FCBEF to launch the erase verify command.

After launching the erase verify command, the FCCF flag in the FSTAT register will set after the operation has completed. The number of bus cycles required to execute the erase verify operation is equal to the number of addresses in the flash array memory plus several bus cycles as measured from the time the FCBEF flag is cleared until the FCCF flag is set. Upon completion of the erase verify operation, the FBLANK flag in the FSTAT register will be set if all addresses in the flash array memory are verified to be erased. If any address in the flash array memory is not erased, the erase verify operation will terminate and the FBLANK flag in the FSTAT register will remain clear.

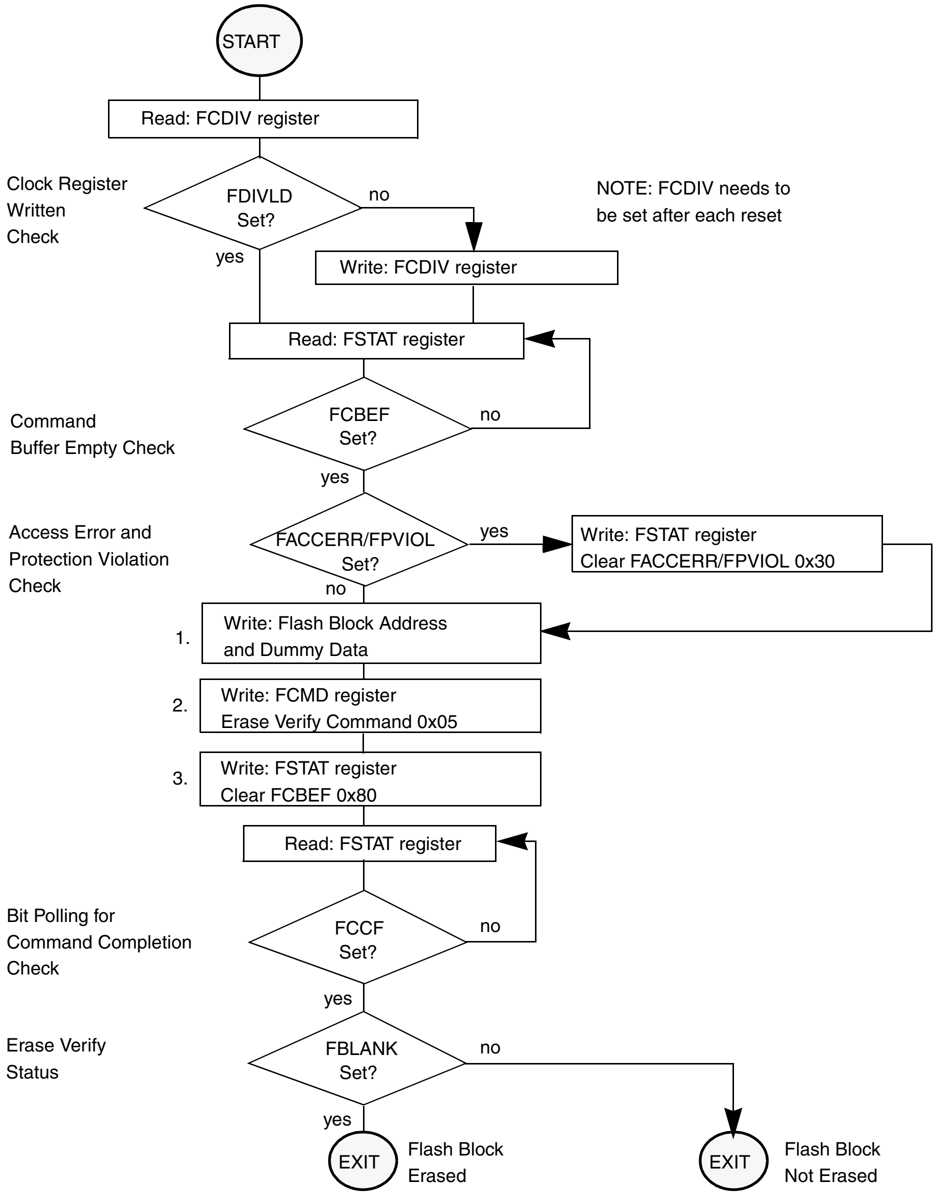


Figure 4-2. Example Erase Verify Command Flow

4.5.3.2 Program Command

The program operation will program a previously erased address in the flash memory using an embedded algorithm.

An example flow to execute the program operation is shown in Figure 4-3. The program command write sequence is as follows:

1. Write to a flash block address to start the command write sequence for the program command. The data written will be programmed to the address written.
2. Write the program command, 0x20, to the FCMD register.

3. Clear the FCBEF flag in the FSTAT register by writing a 1 to FCBEF to launch the program command.

If an address to be programmed is in a protected area of the flash block, the FPVIOL flag in the FSTAT register will set and the program command will not launch. Once the program command has successfully launched, the FCCF flag in the FSTAT register will set after the program operation has completed.

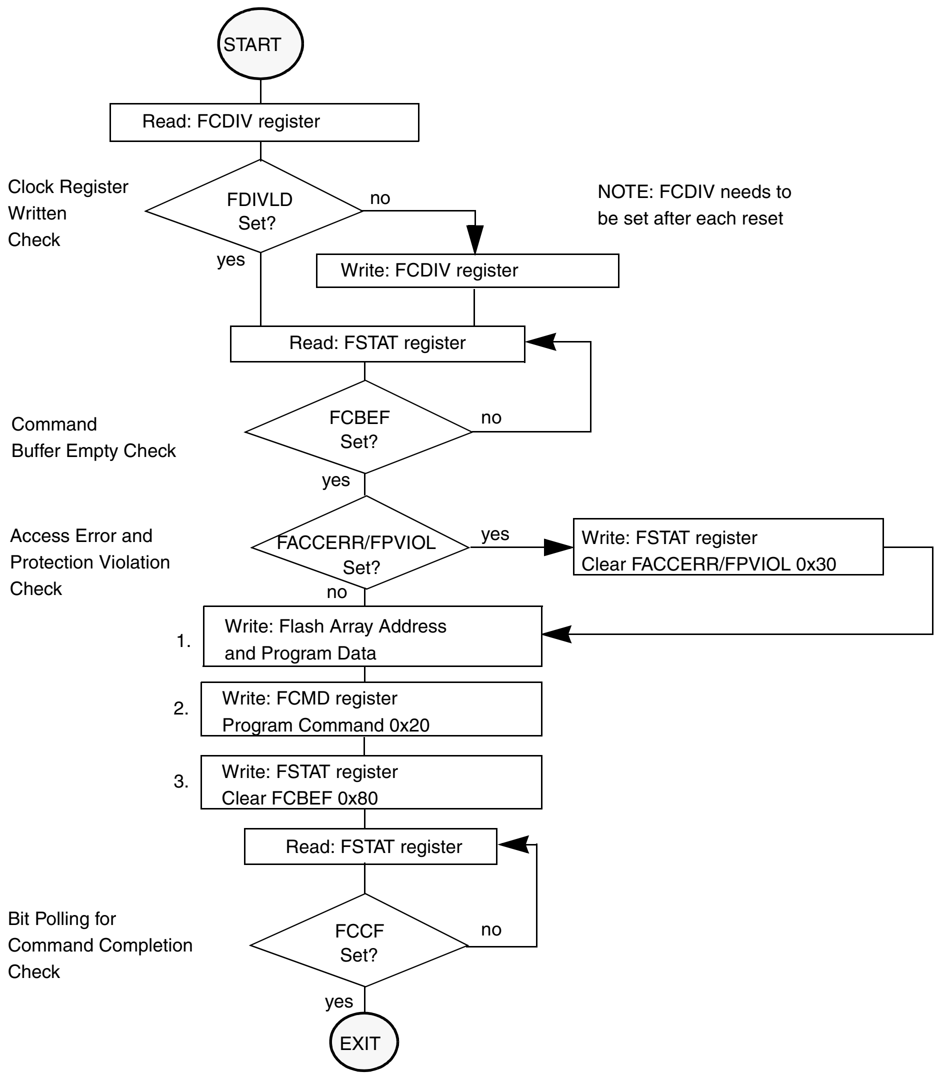


Figure 4-3. Example Program Command Flow

4.5.3.3 Burst Program Command

The burst program operation will program previously erased data in the flash memory using an embedded algorithm.

While burst programming, two internal data registers operate as a buffer and a register (2-stage FIFO) so that a second burst programming command along with the necessary data can be stored to the buffers while the first burst programming command is still in progress. This pipelined operation allows a time optimization when programming more than one consecutive address on a specific row in the flash array as the high voltage generation can be kept active in between two programming commands.

An example flow to execute the burst program operation is shown in Figure 4-4. The burst program command write sequence is as follows:

1. Write to a flash block address to start the command write sequence for the burst program command. The data written will be programmed to the address written.
2. Write the program burst command, 0x25, to the FCMD register.
3. Clear the FCBEF flag in the FSTAT register by writing a 1 to FCBEF to launch the program burst command.
4. After the FCBEF flag in the FSTAT register returns to a 1, repeat steps 1 through 3. The address written is ignored but is incremented internally.

The burst program procedure can be used to program an entire flash array even while crossing row boundaries within the flash array. However, the burst program command cannot cross array boundaries. The array boundary for this MCU occurs between extended addresses 0x0FFFF and 0x10000. At least two burst commands are required to program the entire 128K of flash memory.

If data to be burst programmed falls within a protected area of the flash array, the FPVIOL flag in the FSTAT register will set and the burst program command will not launch. Once the burst program command has successfully launched, the FCCF flag in the FSTAT register will set after the burst program operation has completed unless a new burst program command write sequence has been buffered. By executing a new burst program command write sequence on sequential addresses after the FCBEF flag in the FSTAT register has been set, greater than 50% faster programming time for the entire flash array can be effectively achieved when compared to using the basic program command.

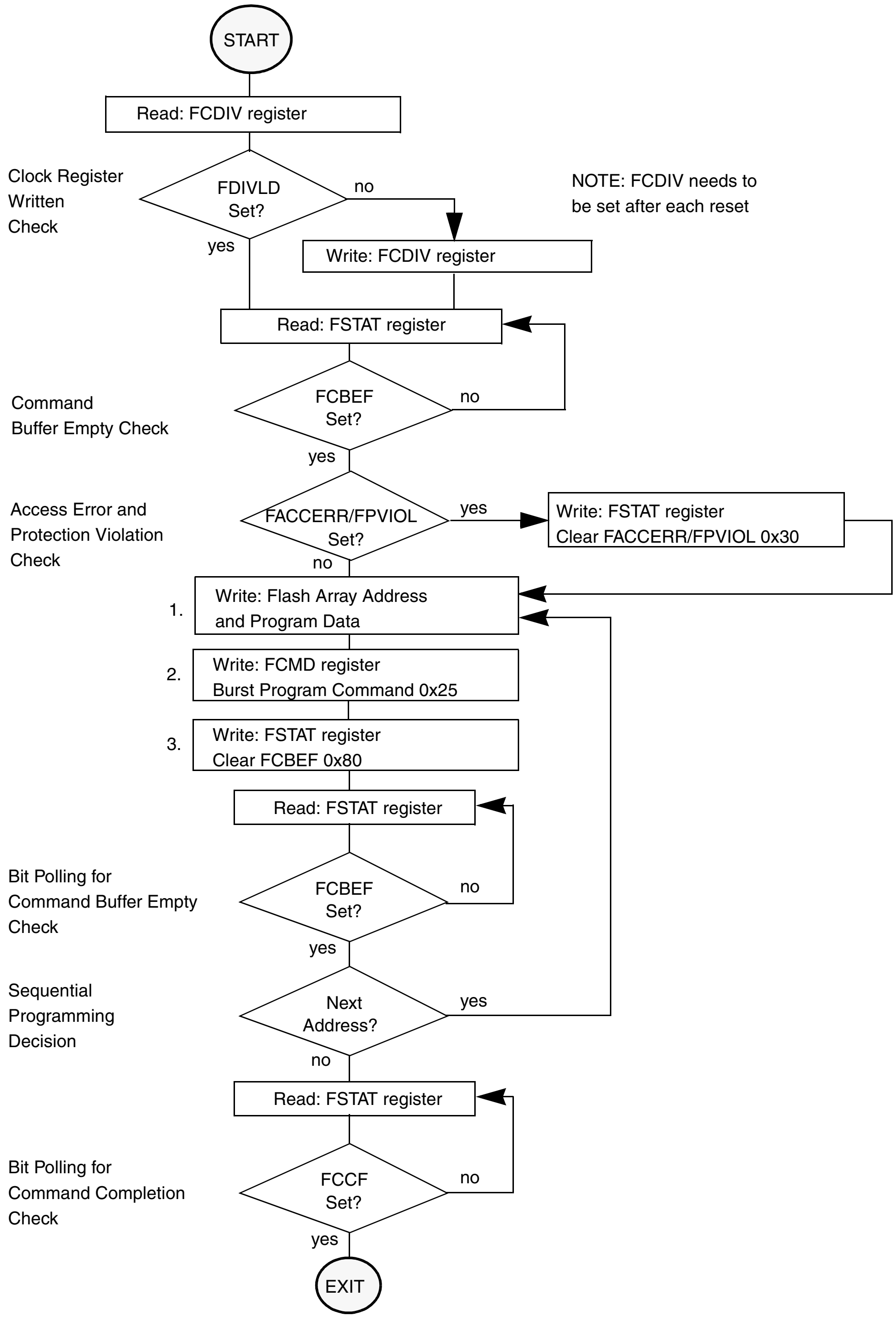


Figure 4-4. Example Burst Program Command Flow

4.5.3.4 Sector Erase Command

The sector erase operation will erase all addresses in a 1 Kbyte sector of flash memory using an embedded algorithm.

An example flow to execute the sector erase operation is shown in Figure 4-5. The sector erase command write sequence is as follows:

1. Write to a flash block address to start the command write sequence for the sector erase command. The flash address written determines the sector to be erased while global address bits [8:0] and the data written are ignored.
2. Write the sector erase command, 0x40, to the FCMD register.
3. Clear the FCBEF flag in the FSTAT register by writing a 1 to FCBEF to launch the sector erase command.

If a flash sector to be erased is in a protected area of the flash block, the FPVIOL flag in the FSTAT register will set and the sector erase command will not launch. Once the sector erase command has successfully launched, the FCCF flag in the FSTAT register will set after the sector erase operation has completed.

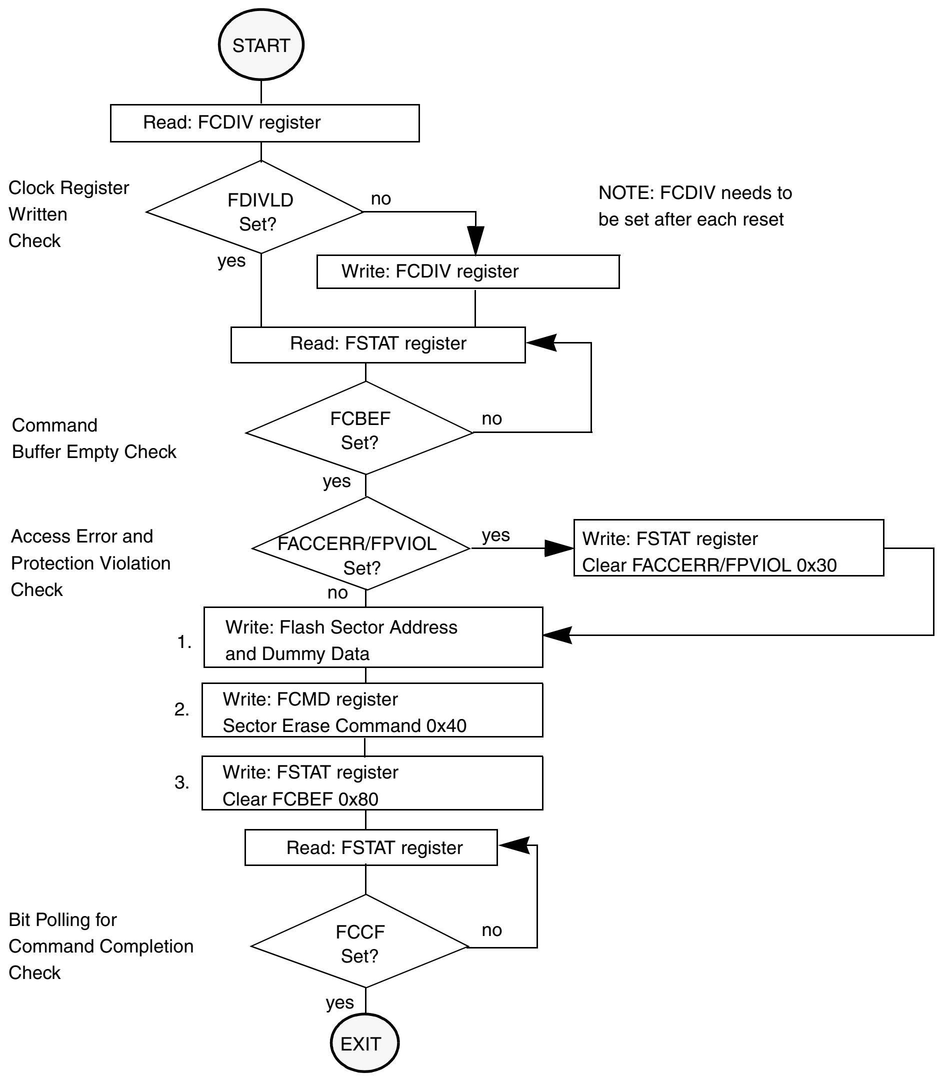


Figure 4-5. Example Sector Erase Command Flow

4.5.3.5 Mass Erase Command

The mass erase operation erases the entire flash array memory using an embedded algorithm. An example flow to execute the mass erase operation is shown in Figure 4-6. The mass erase command write sequence is as follows:

1. Write to a flash block address to start the command write sequence for the mass erase command. The address and data written is ignored.
2. Write the mass erase command, 0x41, to the FCMD register.
3. Clear the FCBEF flag in the FSTAT register by writing a 1 to FCBEF to launch the mass erase command.

If the flash array memory to be mass erased contains any protected area, FSTAT[FPVIOL] is set and the mass erase command does not launch. After the mass erase command has successfully launched and the mass erase operation has completed, FSTAT[FCCF] is set.

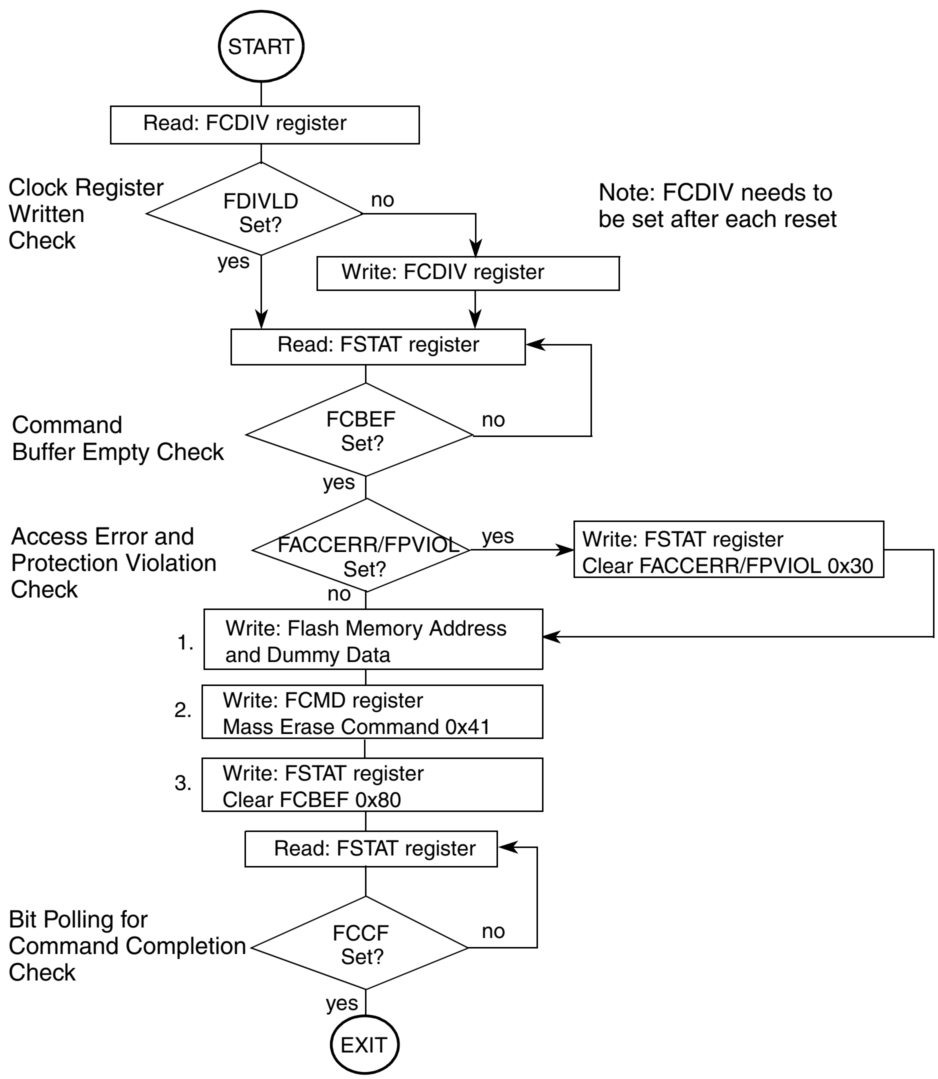


Figure 4-6. Example Mass Erase Command Flow

4.5.4 Access Errors

An access error occurs whenever the command execution protocol is violated.

Any of the following specific actions will cause the access error flag (FACCERR) in FSTAT to be set. FACCERR must be cleared by writing a 1 to FACCERR in FSTAT before any command can be processed.

- Writing to a FLASH address before the internal FLASH clock frequency has been set by writing to the FCDIV register
- Writing to a FLASH address while FCBEF is not set (A new command cannot be started until the command buffer is empty.)
- Writing a second time to a FLASH address before launching the previous command (There is only one write to FLASH for every command.)
- Writing a second time to FCMD before launching the previous command (There is only one write to FCMD for every command.)
- Writing to any FLASH control register other than FCMD after writing to a FLASH address
- Writing any command code other than the five allowed codes (0x05, 0x20, 0x25, 0x40, or 0x41) to FCMD
- Writing any FLASH control register other than the write to FSTAT (to clear FCBEF and launch the command) after writing the command to FCMD
- The MCU enters stop mode while a program or erase command is in progress (The command is aborted.)
- Writing the byte program, burst program, or page erase command code (0x20, 0x25, or 0x40) with a background debug command while the MCU is secured (The background debug controller can only do blank check and mass erase commands when the MCU is secure.)
- Writing 0 to FCBEF to cancel a partial command

4.5.5 FLASH Block Protection

The block protection feature prevents the protected region of FLASH from program or erase changes. Block protection is controlled through the FLASH protection register (FPROT). When enabled, block protection begins at any 512 byte boundary below the last address of FLASH, 0xFFFF. (See Section 4.7.4, "FLASH Protection Register (FPROT and NVPROT)").

After exit from reset, FPROT is loaded with the contents of the NVPROT location, which is in the nonvolatile register block of the FLASH memory. FPROT cannot be changed directly from application software so a runaway program cannot alter the block protection settings. Because NVPROT is within the last 512 bytes of FLASH, if any amount of memory is protected, NVPROT is itself protected and cannot be altered (intentionally or unintentionally) by the application software. FPROT can be written through background debug commands, which allows a way to erase and reprogram a protected FLASH memory.

The block protection mechanism is illustrated in Figure 4-7. The FPS bits are used as the upper bits of the last address of unprotected memory. This address is formed by concatenating FPS7:FPS1 with logic 1 bits as shown. For example, to protect the last 1536 bytes of memory (addresses 0xFA00 through 0xFFFF), the FPS bits must be set to 1111 100, which results in the value 0xF9FF as the last address of unprotected memory. In addition to programming the FPS bits to the appropriate value, FPDIS (bit 0 of NVPROT) must be programmed to logic 0 to enable block protection. Therefore the value 0xF8 must be programmed into NVPROT to protect addresses 0xFA00 through 0xFFFF.

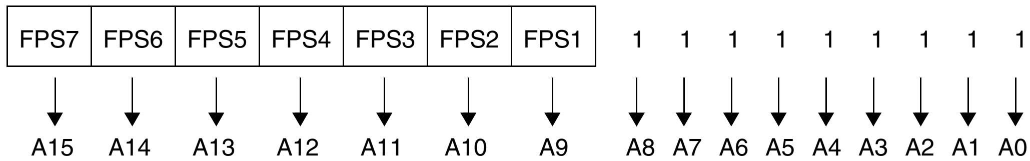


Figure 4-7. Block Protection Mechanism

One use for block protection is to block protect an area of FLASH memory for a bootloader program. This bootloader program then can be used to erase the rest of the FLASH memory and reprogram it. Because the bootloader is protected, it remains intact even if MCU power is lost in the middle of an erase and reprogram operation.

4.5.6 Vector Redirection

Whenever any block protection is enabled, the reset and interrupt vectors will be protected. Vector redirection allows users to modify interrupt vector information without unprotecting bootloader and reset vector space. Vector redirection is enabled by programming the FNORED bit in the NVOPT register located at address 0xFFBF to zero. For redirection to occur, at least some portion but not all of the FLASH memory must be block protected by programming the NVPROT register located at address 0xFFBD. All of the interrupt vectors (memory locations 0xFFC0–0xFFFD) are redirected, though the reset vector (0xFFFE:FFFF) is not.

For example, if 512 bytes of FLASH are protected, the protected address region is from 0xFE00 through 0xFFFF. The interrupt vectors (0xFFC0–0xFFFD) are redirected to the locations 0xFDC0–0xFDFD. Now, if an ADC conversion interrupt is taken, for instance, the values in the locations 0xFDD0:FDD1 are taken instead of the values in the locations 0xFFD0:FFD1. This allows the user to reprogram the unprotected portion of the FLASH with new program code including new interrupt vector values while leaving the protected area, which includes the default vector locations, unchanged.

4.6 Security

The MC9S08SC4 includes circuitry to prevent unauthorized access to the contents of FLASH and RAM memory. When security is engaged, FLASH and RAM are considered secure resources. Direct-page registers, high-page registers, and the background debug controller are considered unsecured resources. Programs executing within secure memory have normal access to any MCU memory locations and resources. Attempts to access a secure memory location with a program executing from an unsecured memory space or through the background debug interface are blocked (writes are ignored and reads return all 0s).

Security is engaged or disengaged based on the state of two nonvolatile register bits (SEC01:SEC00) in the FOPT register. During reset, the contents of the nonvolatile location NVOPT are copied from FLASH into the working FOPT register in high-page register space. A user engages security by programming the NVOPT location which can be done at the same time the FLASH memory is programmed. The 1:0 state disengages security and the other three combinations engage security. Notice the erased state (1:1) makes the MCU secure. During development, whenever the FLASH is erased, it is good practice to immediately program the SEC00 bit to 0 in NVOPT so SEC01:SEC00 = 1:0. This would allow the MCU to remain unsecured after a subsequent reset.

The on-chip debug module cannot be enabled while the MCU is secure. The separate background debug controller can still be used for background memory access commands of unsecured resources.

A user can choose to allow or disallow a security unlocking mechanism through an 8-byte backdoor security key. If the nonvolatile KEYEN bit in NVOPT/FOPT is 0, the backdoor key is disabled and there is no way to disengage security without completely erasing all FLASH locations. If KEYEN is 1, a secure user program can temporarily disengage security by:

1. Writing 1 to KEYACC in the FCNFG register. This makes the FLASH module interpret writes to the backdoor comparison key locations (NVBACKKEY through NVBACKKEY+7) as values to be compared against the key rather than as the first step in a FLASH program or erase command.
2. Writing the user-entered key values to the NVBACKKEY through NVBACKKEY+7 locations. These writes must be done in order starting with the value for NVBACKKEY and ending with NVBACKKEY+7. STHX should not be used for these writes because these writes cannot be done on adjacent bus cycles. User software normally would get the key codes from outside the MCU system through a communication interface such as a serial I/O.
3. Writing 0 to KEYACC in the FCNFG register. If the 8-byte key that was just written matches the key stored in the FLASH locations, SEC01:SEC00 are automatically changed to 1:0 and security will be disengaged until the next reset.

The security key can be written only from secure memory (either RAM or FLASH), so it cannot be entered through background commands without the cooperation of a secure user program.

The backdoor comparison key (NVBACKKEY through NVBACKKEY+7) is located in FLASH memory locations in the nonvolatile register space so users can program these locations exactly as they would program any other FLASH memory location. The nonvolatile registers are in the same 512-byte block of FLASH as the reset and interrupt vectors, so block protecting that space also block protects the backdoor comparison key. Block protects cannot be changed from user application programs, so if the vector space is block protected, the backdoor security key mechanism cannot permanently change the block protect, security settings, or the backdoor key.

Security can always be disengaged through the background debug interface by taking these steps:

1. Disable any block protections by writing FPROT. FPROT can be written only with background debug commands, not from application software.
2. Mass erase FLASH if necessary.
3. Blank check FLASH. Provided FLASH is completely erased, security is disengaged until the next reset.

   To avoid returning to secure mode after the next reset, program NVOPT so SEC01:SEC00 = 1:0.

4.7 FLASH Registers and Control Bits

The FLASH module has six 8-bit registers in the high-page register space. Two locations (NVOPT, NVPROT) in the nonvolatile register space in FLASH memory are copied into corresponding high-page control registers (FOPT, FPROT) at reset. There is also an 8-byte comparison key in FLASH memory. Refer to Table 4-3 and Table 4-4 for the absolute address assignments for all FLASH registers. This section refers to registers and control bits only by their names. A Freescale Semiconductor-provided equate or header file normally is used to translate these names into the appropriate absolute addresses.

4.7.1 FLASH Clock Divider Register (FCDIV)

Bit 7 of this register is a read-only flag. Bits 6:0 may be read at any time but can be written only one time. Before any erase or programming operations are possible, write to this register to set the frequency of the clock for the nonvolatile memory system within acceptable limits.

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	DIVLD	PRDIV8	DIV					
W								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

= Unimplemented or Reserved

Figure 4-8. FLASH Clock Divider Register (FCDIV)

Table 4-7. FCDIV Register Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7 DIVLD	**Divisor Loaded Status Flag** — When set, this read-only status flag indicates that the FCDIV register has been written since reset. Reset clears this bit and the first write to this register causes this bit to become set regardless of the data written. 0 FCDIV has not been written since reset; erase and program operations disabled for FLASH. 1 FCDIV has been written since reset; erase and program operations enabled for FLASH.
6 PRDIV8	**Prescale (Divide) FLASH Clock by 8** 0 Clock input to the FLASH clock divider is the bus rate clock. 1 Clock input to the FLASH clock divider is the bus rate clock divided by 8.
5:0 DIV	**Divisor for FLASH Clock Divider** — The FLASH clock divider divides the bus rate clock (or the bus rate clock divided by 8 if PRDIV8 = 1) by the value in the 6-bit DIV field plus one. The resulting frequency of the internal FLASH clock must fall within the range of 200 kHz to 150 kHz for proper FLASH operations. Program/Erase timing pulses are one cycle of this internal FLASH clock which corresponds to a range of 5 μs to 6.7 μs. The automated programming logic uses an integer number of these pulses to complete an erase or program operation. See Equation 4-1 and Equation 4-2.

$$\text{if PRDIV8} = 0 \text{ — } f_{FCLK} = f_{Bus} \div (\text{DIV} + 1) \qquad \textit{Eqn. 4-1}$$

$$\text{if PRDIV8} = 1 \text{ — } f_{FCLK} = f_{Bus} \div (8 \times (\text{DIV} + 1)) \qquad \textit{Eqn. 4-2}$$

Table 4-8 shows the appropriate values for PRDIV8 and DIV for selected bus frequencies.

Table 4-8. FLASH Clock Divider Settings

f_{Bus}	PRDIV8 (Binary)	DIV (Decimal)	f_{FCLK}	Program/Erase Timing Pulse (5 μs Min, 6.7 μs Max)
20 MHz	1	12	192.3 kHz	5.2 μs
10 MHz	0	49	200 kHz	5 μs
8 MHz	0	39	200 kHz	5 μs
4 MHz	0	19	200 kHz	5 μs
2 MHz	0	9	200 kHz	5 μs
1 MHz	0	4	200 kHz	5 μs
200 kHz	0	0	200 kHz	5 μs
150 kHz	0	0	150 kHz	6.7 μs

4.7.2 FLASH Options Register (FOPT and NVOPT)

During reset, the contents of the nonvolatile location NVOPT are copied from FLASH into FOPT. To change the value in this register, erase and reprogram the NVOPT location in FLASH memory as usual and then issue a new MCU reset.

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	KEYEN	FNORED	0	0	0	0	SEC1	SEC0
W								
Reset	This register is loaded from nonvolatile location NVOPT during reset.							

= Unimplemented or Reserved

Figure 4-9. FLASH Options Register (FOPT)

Table 4-9. FOPT Register Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7 KEYEN	**Backdoor Key Mechanism Enable** — When this bit is 0, the backdoor key mechanism cannot be used to disengage security. The backdoor key mechanism is accessible only from user (secured) firmware. BDM commands cannot be used to write key comparison values that would unlock the backdoor key. For more detailed information about the backdoor key mechanism, refer to Section 4.6, "Security." 0 No backdoor key access allowed. 1 If user firmware writes an 8-byte value that matches the nonvolatile backdoor key (NVBACKKEY through NVBACKKEY+7 in that order), security is temporarily disengaged until the next MCU reset.

Table 4-9. FOPT Register Field Descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
6 FNORED	**Vector Redirection Disable** — When this bit is 1, then vector redirection is disabled. 0 Vector redirection enabled. 1 Vector redirection disabled.
1:0 SEC0[1:0]	**Security State Code** — This 2-bit field determines the security state of the MCU as shown in Table 4-10. When the MCU is secure, the contents of RAM and FLASH memory cannot be accessed by instructions from any unsecured source including the background debug interface. SEC01:SEC00 changes to 1:0 after successful backdoor key entry or a successful blank check of FLASH. For more detailed information about security, refer to Section 4.6, "Security."

Table 4-10. Security States[1]

SEC01:SEC00	Description
0:0	secure
0:1	secure
1:0	unsecured
1:1	secure

[1] SEC01:SEC00 changes to 1:0 after successful backdoor key entry or a successful blank check of FLASH.

4.7.3 FLASH Configuration Register (FCNFG)

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0	0	KEYACC	0	0	0	0	0
W								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

= Unimplemented or Reserved

Figure 4-10. FLASH Configuration Register (FCNFG)

Table 4-11. FCNFG Register Field Descriptions

Field	Description
5 KEYACC	**Enable Writing of Access Key** — This bit enables writing of the backdoor comparison key. For more detailed information about the backdoor key mechanism, refer to Section 4.6, "Security." 0 Writes to 0xFFB0–0xFFB7 are interpreted as the start of a FLASH programming or erase command. 1 Writes to NVBACKKEY (0xFFB0–0xFFB7) are interpreted as comparison key writes.

4.7.4 FLASH Protection Register (FPROT and NVPROT)

During reset, the contents of the nonvolatile location NVPROT is copied from FLASH into FPROT. This register can be read at any time. With FPDIS set, all bits are writeable, but with FPDIS clear the FPS bits are writeable as long as the size of the protected region is being increased. Any FPROT write that attempts to decrease the size of the protected region will be ignored.

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R / W	FPS[1]							FPDIS[1]
Reset	This register is loaded from nonvolatile location NVPROT during reset.							

[1] Background commands can be used to change the contents of these bits in FPROT.

Figure 4-11. FLASH Protection Register (FPROT)

Table 4-12. FPROT Register Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7:1 FPS	**FLASH Protect Select Bits** — When FPDIS = 0, this 7-bit field determines the ending address of unprotected FLASH locations at the high address end of the FLASH. Protected FLASH locations cannot be erased or programmed.
0 FPDIS	**FLASH Protection Disable** 0 FLASH block specified by FPS7:FPS1 is block protected (program and erase not allowed). 1 No FLASH block is protected.

4.7.5 FLASH Status Register (FSTAT)

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	FCBEF	FCCF	FPVIOL	FACCERR	0	FBLANK	0	0
W								
Reset	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0

= Unimplemented or Reserved

Figure 4-12. FLASH Status Register (FSTAT)

Table 4-13. FSTAT Register Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7 FCBEF	**FLASH Command Buffer Empty Flag** — The FCBEF bit is used to launch commands. It also indicates that the command buffer is empty so that a new command sequence can be executed when performing burst programming. The FCBEF bit is cleared by writing a 1 to it or when a burst program command is transferred to the array for programming. Only burst program commands can be buffered. 0 Command buffer is full (not ready for additional commands). 1 A new burst program command can be written to the command buffer.
6 FCCF	**FLASH Command Complete Flag** — FCCF is set automatically when the command buffer is empty and no command is being processed. FCCF is cleared automatically when a new command is started (by writing 1 to FCBEF to register a command). Writing to FCCF has no meaning or effect. 0 Command in progress 1 All commands complete

Table 4-13. FSTAT Register Field Descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
5 FPVIOL	**Protection Violation Flag** — FPVIOL is set automatically when a command is written that attempts to erase or program a location in a protected block (the erroneous command is ignored). FPVIOL is cleared by writing a 1 to FPVIOL. 0 No protection violation. 1 An attempt was made to erase or program a protected location.
4 FACCERR	**Access Error Flag** — FACCERR is set automatically when the proper command sequence is not obeyed exactly (the erroneous command is ignored), if a program or erase operation is attempted before the FCDIV register has been initialized, or if the MCU enters stop while a command was in progress. For a more detailed discussion of the exact actions that are considered access errors, see Section 4.5.4, "Access Errors." FACCERR is cleared by writing a 1 to FACCERR. Writing a 0 to FACCERR has no meaning or effect. 0 No access error. 1 An access error has occurred.
2 FBLANK	**FLASH Verified as All Blank (erased) Flag** — FBLANK is set automatically at the conclusion of a blank check command if the entire FLASH array was verified to be erased. FBLANK is cleared by clearing FCBEF to write a new valid command. Writing to FBLANK has no meaning or effect. 0 After a blank check command is completed and FCCF = 1, FBLANK = 0 indicates the FLASH array is not completely erased. 1 After a blank check command is completed and FCCF = 1, FBLANK = 1 indicates the FLASH array is completely erased (all 0xFF).

4.7.6 FLASH Command Register (FCMD)

Only five command codes are recognized in normal user modes as shown in Table 4-14. Refer to Section 4.5.3, "Flash Commands," for a detailed discussion of FLASH programming and erase operations.

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
W	FCMD							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 4-13. FLASH Command Register (FCMD)

Table 4-14. FLASH Commands

Command	FCMD	Equate File Label
Blank check	0x05	mBlank
Byte program	0x20	mByteProg
Byte program — burst mode	0x25	mBurstProg
Page erase (512 bytes/page)	0x40	mPageErase
Mass erase (all FLASH)	0x41	mMassErase

All other command codes are illegal and generate an access error.

It is not necessary to perform a blank check command after a mass erase operation. Only blank check is required as part of the security unlocking mechanism.

Chapter 5
Resets, Interrupts, and General System Control

5.1 Introduction

This section discusses basic reset and interrupt mechanisms and the various sources of reset and interrupt in the MC9S08SC4. Some interrupt sources from peripheral modules are discussed in greater detail within other sections of this data sheet. This section gathers basic information about all reset and interrupt sources in one place for easy reference. A few reset and interrupt sources, including the computer operating properly (COP) watchdog are not part of on-chip peripheral systems with their own chapters.

5.2 Features

Reset and interrupt features include:

- Multiple sources of reset for flexible system configuration and reliable operation
- Reset status register (SRS) to indicate source of most recent reset
- Separate interrupt vector for each module (reduces polling overhead) (see Table 5-2)

5.3 MCU Reset

Resetting the MCU provides a way to start processing from a known set of initial conditions. During reset, most control and status registers are forced to initial values and the program counter is loaded from the reset vector (0xFFFE:0xFFFF). On-chip peripheral modules are disabled and I/O pins are initially configured as general-purpose high-impedance inputs with pull-up devices disabled. The I bit in the condition code register (CCR) is set to block maskable interrupts so the user program has a chance to initialize the stack pointer (SP) and system control settings. SP is forced to 0x00FF at reset.

The MC9S08SC4 has the following sources for reset:

- Power-on reset (POR)
- External pin reset (PIN)
- Low-voltage detect (LVD)
- Computer operating properly (COP) timer
- Illegal opcode detect (ILOP)
- Illegal address detect (ILAD)
- Background debug forced reset (BDFR)

Each of these sources, with the exception of the background debug forced reset, has an associated bit in the system reset status register (SRS).

5.4 Computer Operating Properly (COP) Watchdog

The COP watchdog is intended to force a system reset when the application software fails to execute as expected. To prevent a system reset from the COP timer (when it is enabled), application software must reset the COP counter periodically. If the application program gets lost and fails to reset the COP counter before it times out, a system reset is generated to force the system back to a known starting point.

After any reset, the COP watchdog is enabled (see Section 5.7.3, "System Options Register 1 (SOPT1)," for additional information). If the COP watchdog is not used in an application, it can be disabled by clearing COPT bits in SOPT1.

The COP counter is reset by writing 0x55 and 0xAA (in this order) to the address of SRS during the selected timeout period. Writes do not affect the data in the read-only SRS. As soon as the write sequence is done, the COP timeout period is restarted. If the program fails to do this during the time-out period, the MCU will reset. Also, if any value other than 0x55 or 0xAA is written to SRS, the MCU is immediately reset.

The COPCLKS bit in SOPT2 (see Section 5.7.4, "System Options Register 2 (SOPT2)," for additional information) selects the clock source used for the COP timer. The clock source options are either the bus clock or an internal 1-kHz clock source. With each clock source, there are three associated time-outs controlled by the COPT bits in SOPT1. Table 5-1 summaries the control functions of the COPCLKS and COPT bits. The COP watchdog defaults to operation from the 1-kHz clock source and the longest time-out (2^{10} cycles).

Table 5-1. COP Configuration Options

Control Bits		Clock Source	COP Window[1] Opens (COPW = 1)	COP Overflow Count
COPCLKS	COPT[1:0]			
N/A	0:0	N/A	N/A	COP is disabled
0	0:1	1 kHz	N/A	2^5 cycles (32 ms[2])
0	1:0	1 kHz	N/A	2^8 cycles (256 ms[2])
0	1:1	1 kHz	N/A	2^{10} cycles (1,024 ms[2])
1	0:1	Bus	6144 cycles	2^{13} cycles
1	1:0	Bus	49,152 cycles	2^{16} cycles
1	1:1	Bus	196,608 cycles	2^{18} cycles

1 Windowed COP operation requires the user to clear the COP timer in the last 25% of the selected timeout period. This column displays the minimum number of clock counts required before the COP timer can be reset when in windowed COP mode (COPW = 1).

2 Values shown in milliseconds based on t_{LPO} = 1 ms. See t_{LPO} in the control timing table in MC9S08SC4 datasheet, for the tolerance of this value.

When the bus clock source is selected, windowed COP operation is available by setting COPW in the SOPT2 register. In this mode, writes to the SRS register to clear the COP timer must occur in the last 25% of the selected timeout period. A premature write immediately resets the MCU. When the 1-kHz clock source is selected, windowed COP operation is not available.

The COP counter is initialized by the first writes to the SOPT1 and SOPT2 registers after any system reset. Subsequent writes to SOPT1 and SOPT2 have no effect on COP operation. Even if the application will use the reset default settings of COPT, COPCLKS, and COPW bits, the user should write to the write-once SOPT1 and SOPT2 registers during reset initialization to lock in the settings. This will prevent accidental changes if the application program gets lost.

The write to SRS that services (clears) the COP counter should not be placed in an interrupt service routine (ISR) because the ISR could continue to be executed periodically even if the main application program fails.

If the bus clock source is selected, the COP counter does not increment while the MCU is in background debug mode or while the system is in stop mode. The COP counter resumes when the MCU exits background debug mode or stop mode.

If the 1 kHz clock source is selected, the COP counter does not increment and is re-initialized to zero while the MCU is in the background debug mode or while the system is in stop mode. The COP counter resumes from zero when the MCU exits background debug mode or stop mode.

5.5 Interrupts

Interrupts provide a way to save the current CPU status and registers, execute an interrupt service routine (ISR), and then restore the CPU status so processing resumes where it left off before the interrupt. Other than the software interrupt (SWI), which is a program instruction, interrupts are caused by hardware events such as an edge on a pin interrupt or a timer-overflow event. The debug module can also generate an SWI under certain circumstances.

If an event occurs in an enabled interrupt source, an associated read-only status flag will become set. The CPU will not respond unless the local interrupt enable is a 1 to enable the interrupt and the I bit in the CCR is 0 to allow interrupts. The global interrupt mask (I bit) in the CCR is initially set after reset which prevents all maskable interrupt sources. The user program initializes the stack pointer and performs other system setup before clearing the I bit to allow the CPU to respond to interrupts.

When the CPU receives a qualified interrupt request, it completes the current instruction before responding to the interrupt. The interrupt sequence obeys the same cycle-by-cycle sequence as the SWI instruction and consists of:

- Saving the CPU registers on the stack
- Setting the I bit in the CCR to mask further interrupts
- Fetching the interrupt vector for the highest-priority interrupt that is currently pending
- Filling the instruction queue with the first three bytes of program information starting from the address fetched from the interrupt vector locations

While the CPU is responding to the interrupt, the I bit is automatically set to avoid the possibility of another interrupt interrupting the ISR itself (this is called nesting of interrupts). Normally, the I bit is restored to 0 when the CCR is restored from the value stacked on entry to the ISR. In rare cases, the I bit can be cleared inside an ISR (after clearing the status flag that generated the interrupt) so that other interrupts can be serviced without waiting for the first service routine to finish. This practice is not recommended for anyone other than the most experienced programmers because it can lead to subtle program errors that are difficult to debug.

The interrupt service routine ends with a return-from-interrupt (RTI) instruction which restores the CCR, A, X, and PC registers to their pre-interrupt values by reading the previously saved information from the stack.

NOTE

For compatibility with M68HC08 devices, the H register is not automatically saved and restored. It is good programming practice to push H onto the stack at the start of the interrupt service routine (ISR) and restore it immediately before the RTI that is used to return from the ISR.

If more than one interrupt is pending when the I bit is cleared, the highest priority source is serviced first (see Table 5-2).

5.5.1 Interrupt Stack Frame

Figure 5-1 shows the contents and organization of a stack frame. Before the interrupt, the stack pointer (SP) points at the next available byte location on the stack. The current values of CPU registers are stored on the stack starting with the low-order byte of the program counter (PCL) and ending with the CCR. After stacking, the SP points at the next available location on the stack which is the address that is one less than the address where the CCR was saved. The PC value that is stacked is the address of the instruction in the main program that would have executed next if the interrupt had not occurred.

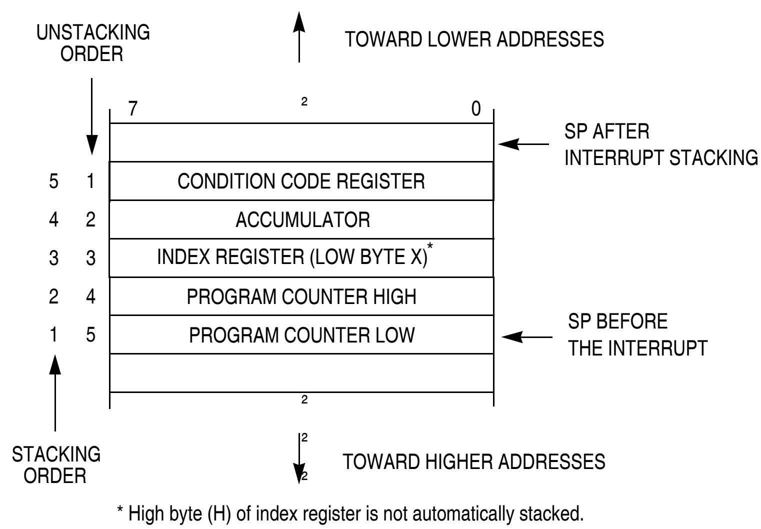


Figure 5-1. Interrupt Stack Frame

When an RTI instruction is executed, these values are recovered from the stack in reverse order. As part of the RTI sequence, the CPU fills the instruction pipeline by reading three bytes of program information, starting from the PC address recovered from the stack.

The status flag corresponding to the interrupt source must be acknowledged (cleared) before returning from the ISR. Typically, the flag is cleared at the beginning of the ISR so that if another interrupt is generated by this same source, it will be registered so it can be serviced after completion of the current ISR.

5.5.2 Interrupt Vectors, Sources, and Local Masks

Table 5-2 provides a summary of all interrupt sources. Higher-priority sources are located toward the bottom of the table. The high-order byte of the address for the interrupt service routine is located at the first address in the vector address column, and the low-order byte of the address for the interrupt service routine is located at the next higher address.

When an interrupt condition occurs, an associated flag bit becomes set. If the associated local interrupt enable is 1, an interrupt request is sent to the CPU. Within the CPU, if the global interrupt mask (I bit in the CCR) is 0, the CPU will finish the current instruction; stack the PCL, PCH, X, A, and CCR CPU registers; set the I bit; and then fetch the interrupt vector for the highest priority pending interrupt. Processing then continues in the interrupt service routine.

Table 5-2. Vector Summary

Vector Priority	Vector Number	Address (High/Low)	Vector Name	Module	Source	Enable	Description
Lowest	31	0xFFC0/0xFFC1	—	—	—	—	—
	30	0xFFC2/0xFFC3	—	—	—	—	—
	29	0xFFC4/0xFFC5	—	—	—	—	—
	28	0xFFC6/0xFFC7	—	—	—	—	—
	27	0xFFC8/0xFFC9	—	—	—	—	—
	26	0xFFCA/0xFFCB	—	—	—	—	—
	25	0xFFCC/0xFFCD	—	—	—	—	—
	24	0xFFCE/0xFFCF	—	—	—	—	—
	23	0xFFD0/0xFFD1	Vadc	ADC	COCO	AIEN	ADC
	22	0xFFD2/0xFFD3	—	—	—	—	—
	21	0xFFD4/0xFFD5	Vportb	Port B	PTBIF	PTBIE	Port B Pins
	20	0xFFD6/0xFFD7	Vporta	Port A	PTAIF	PTAIE	Port A Pins
	19	0xFFD8/0xFFD9	—	—	—	—	—
	18	0xFFDA/0xFFDB	Vscitx	SCI	TDRE, TC	TIE, TCIE	SCI transmit
	17	0xFFDC/0xFFDD	Vscirx	SCI	IDLE, RDRF, LBKDIF, RXEDGIF	ILIE, RIE, LBKDIE, RXEDGIE	SCI receive
	16	0xFFDE/0xFFDF	Vscierr	SCI	OR, NF, FE, PF	ORIE, NFIE, FEIE, PFIE	SCI error
	15	0xFFE0/0xFFE1	—	—	—	—	—
	14	0xFFE2/0xFFE3	Vtpm2ovf	TPM2	TOF	TOIE	TPM2 overflow
	13	0xFFE4/0xFFE5	Vtpm2ch1	TPM2	CH1F	CH1IE	TPM2 channel 1
	12	0xFFE6/0xFFE7	Vtpm2ch0	TPM2	CH0F	CH0IE	TPM2 channel 0
	11	0xFFE8/0xFFE9	Vtpm1ovf	TPM1	TOF	TOIE	TPM1 overflow
	10	0xFFEA/0xFFEB	—	—	—	—	—
	9	0xFFEC/0xFFED	—	—	—	—	—
	8	0xFFEE/0xFFEF	—	—	—	—	—
	7	0xFFF0/0xFFF1	—	—	—	—	—
	6	0xFFF2/0xFFF3	Vtpm1ch1	TPM1	CH1F	CH1IE	TPM1 channel 1
	5	0xFFF4/0xFFF5	Vtpm1ch0	TPM1	CH0F	CH0IE	TPM1 channel 0
	4	0xFFF6/0xFFF7	—	—	—	—	—
	3	0xFFF8/0xFFF9	Vlvd	System control	LVWF	LVWIE	Low-voltage warning
	2	0xFFFA/0xFFFB	—	—	—	—	—
	1	0xFFFC/0xFFFD	Vswi	Core	SWI Instruction	—	Software interrupt
Highest	0	0xFFFE/0xFFFF	Vreset	System control	COP, LVD, POR, $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin, Illegal opcode, Illegal address	COPT LVDRE — — —	Watchdog timer Low-voltage detect External pin Illegal opcode Illegal address

5.6 Low-Voltage Detect (LVD) System

The MC9S08SC4 includes a system to protect against low voltage conditions in order to protect memory contents and control MCU system states during supply voltage variations. The system is comprised of a power-on reset (POR) circuit and an LVD circuit with trip voltages for warning and detection. The LVD circuit is enabled when LVDE in SPMSC1 is set to 1. The LVD is disabled upon entering any of the stop modes unless LVDSE is set in SPMSC1. If LVDSE and LVDE are both set, then the MCU cannot enter stop2 (will enter stop3 instead), and the current consumption in stop3 with the LVD enabled will be higher.

5.6.1 Power-On Reset Operation

When power is initially applied to the MCU, or when the supply voltage drops below the power-on reset rearm voltage level, V_{POR}, the POR circuit will cause a reset condition. As the supply voltage rises, the LVD circuit will hold the MCU in reset until the supply has risen above the low voltage detection low threshold, V_{LVDL}. Both the POR bit and the LVD bit in SRS are set following a POR.

5.6.2 Low-Voltage Detection (LVD) Reset Operation

The LVD can be configured to generate a reset upon detection of a low voltage condition by setting LVDRE to 1. The low voltage detection threshold is determined by the LVDV bit. After an LVD reset has occurred, the LVD system will hold the MCU in reset until the supply voltage has risen above the low voltage detection threshold, V_{LVDL}. The LVD bit in the SRS register is set following either an LVD reset or POR.

5.6.3 Low-Voltage Warning (LVW) Interrupt Operation

The LVD system has a low voltage warning flag to indicate to the user that the supply voltage is approaching the low voltage condition. When a low voltage warning condition is detected and is configured for interrupt operation (LVWIE set to 1), LVWF in SPMSC1 will be set and an LVW interrupt request will occur.

5.7 Reset, Interrupt, and System Control Registers and Control Bits

Eight 8-bit registers in the high-page register space are related to reset and interrupt systems.

Refer to Table 4-2 and Table 4-3 in Chapter 4, “Memory,” of this data sheet for the absolute address assignments for all registers. This section refers to registers and control bits only by their names. A Freescale-provided equate or header file is used to translate these names into the appropriate absolute addresses.

Some control bits in the SOPT1 and SPMSC2 registers are related to modes of operation. Although brief descriptions of these bits are provided here, the related functions are discussed in greater detail in Chapter 3, “Modes of Operation.”

5.7.1 System Reset Status Register (SRS)

This high page register includes read-only status flags to indicate the source of the most recent reset. When a debug host forces reset by writing 1 to BDFR in the SBDFR register, none of the status bits in SRS will be set. Writing any value to this register address causes a COP reset when the COP is enabled except the values 0x55 and 0xAA. Writing a 0x55-0xAA sequence to this address clears the COP watchdog timer without affecting the contents of this register. Refer to Section 5.4, "Computer Operating Properly (COP) Watchdog, " for a detailed description. The reset state of these bits depends on what caused the MCU to reset.

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	POR	PIN	COP	ILOP	ILAD	0	LVD	0
W	Writing 0x55, 0xAA to SRS address clears COP watchdog timer.[1]							
POR:	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0
LVR:	u[(2)]	0	0	0	0	0	1	0
Any other reset:	0	Note[(3)]	Note[(3)]	Note[(3)]	Note[(3)]	0	0	0

1 Please refer to Section 5.4, "Computer Operating Properly (COP) Watchdog," for a detailed description, also check exception when windowed COP is enabled.

2 u = unaffected

3 Any of these reset sources that are active at the time of reset entry will cause the corresponding bit(s) to be set; bits corresponding to sources that are not active at the time of reset entry will be cleared.

Figure 5-2. System Reset Status (SRS)

Table 5-3. SRS Register Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7 POR	**Power-On Reset** — Reset was caused by the power-on detection logic. Because the internal supply voltage was ramping up at the time, the low-voltage reset (LVR) status bit is also set to indicate that the reset occurred while the internal supply was below the LVR threshold. 0 Reset not caused by POR. 1 POR caused reset.
6 PIN	**External Reset Pin** — Reset was caused by an active-low level on the external reset pin. 0 Reset not caused by external reset pin. 1 Reset came from external reset pin.
5 COP	**Computer Operating Properly (COP) Watchdog** — Reset was caused by the COP watchdog timer timing out. This reset source can be blocked by COPT bits = 0:0. 0 Reset not caused by COP timeout. 1 Reset caused by COP timeout.
4 ILOP	**Illegal Opcode** — Reset was caused by an attempt to execute an unimplemented or illegal opcode. The STOP instruction is considered illegal if stop is disabled by STOPE = 0 in the SOPT register. The BGND instruction is considered illegal if active background mode is disabled by ENBDM = 0 in the BDCSC register. 0 Reset not caused by an illegal opcode. 1 Reset caused by an illegal opcode.

Table 5-3. SRS Register Field Descriptions

Field	Description
3 ILAD	**Illegal Address** — Reset was caused by an attempt to access either data or an instruction at an unimplemented memory address. 0 Reset not caused by an illegal address 1 Reset caused by an illegal address
1 LVD	**Low Voltage Detect** — If the LVDRE bit is set and the supply drops below the LVD trip voltage, an LVD reset will occur. This bit is also set by POR. 0 Reset not caused by LVD trip or POR. 1 Reset caused by LVD trip or POR.

5.7.2 System Background Debug Force Reset Register (SBDFR)

This high page register contains a single write-only control bit. A serial background command such as WRITE_BYTE must be used to write to SBDFR. Attempts to write this register from a user program are ignored. Reads always return 0x00.

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
W								BDFR[1]
Reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

= Unimplemented or Reserved

[1] BDFR is writeable only through serial background debug commands, not from user programs.

Figure 5-3. System Background Debug Force Reset Register (SBDFR)

Table 5-4. SBDFR Register Field Descriptions

Field	Description
0 BDFR	**Background Debug Force Reset** — A serial background command such as WRITE_BYTE can be used to allow an external debug host to force a target system reset. Writing 1 to this bit forces an MCU reset. This bit cannot be written from a user program.

5.7.3 System Options Register 1 (SOPT1)

This high page register is a write-once register so only the first write after reset is honored. It can be read at any time. Any subsequent attempt to write to SOPT1 (intentionally or unintentionally) is ignored to avoid accidental changes to these sensitive settings. SOPT1 should be written during the user's reset initialization program to set the desired controls even if the desired settings are the same as the reset settings.

	7	6	5	4[1]	3	2	1	0
R	COPT		STOPE	0	0	0	0	0
W								
Reset:	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0

= Unimplemented or Reserved

Figure 5-4. System Options Register 1 (SOPT1)

[1] NOTE: Bit 4 is reserved. Writes change the value, but have no effect on this MCU.

Table 5-5. SOPT1 Register Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7:6 COPT[1:0]	**COP Watchdog Timeout** — These write-once bits select the timeout period of the COP. COPT along with COPCLKS in SOPT2 defines the COP timeout period. See Table 5-1.
5 STOPE	**Stop Mode Enable** — This write-once bit is used to enable stop mode. If stop mode is disabled and an user program attempts to execute a STOP instruction, an illegal opcode reset is forced. 0 Stop mode disabled. 1 Stop mode enabled.

5.7.4 System Options Register 2 (SOPT2)

This high page register is a write-once register so only the first write after reset is honored. It contains bits to configure MCU specific features on the MC9S08SC4 devices.

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	COPCLKS[1]	COPW[1]	0	0	0	0	0	0
W								
Reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

= Unimplemented or Reserved

Figure 5-5. System Options Register 2 (SOPT2)

1 This bit can be written only one time after reset. Additional writes are ignored.

Table 5-6. SOPT2 Register Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7 COPCLKS	**COP Watchdog Clock Select** — This write-once bit selects the clock source of the COP watchdog. 0 Internal 1-kHz clock is source to COP. 1 Bus clock is source to COP.
6 COPW	**COP Window** — This write-once bit selects the COP operation mode. When set, the 0x55-0xAA write sequence to the SRS register must occur in the last 25% of the selected period. Any write to the SRS register during the first 75% of the selected period will reset the MCU. 0 Normal COP operation 1 Window COP operation (only if COPCLKS = 1)

5.7.5 System Device Identification Register (SDIDH, SDIDL)

These high page read-only registers are included so host development systems can identify the HCS08 derivative and revision number. This allows the development software to recognize where specific memory blocks, registers, and control bits are located in a target MCU.

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	1				ID11	ID10	ID9	ID8
W								
Reset:	1[1]	—	—	—	0	0	0	0

= Unimplemented or Reserved

[1] - Bit 7 is a mask option tie off that is used internally to determine that the device is a MC9S08SC4.

Figure 5-6. System Device Identification Register — High (SDIDH)

Table 5-7. SDIDH Register Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7	Bit 7 will read as a 1 for the MC9S08SC4 devices; writes have no effect.
6:4 Reserved	Bits 6:4 are reserved. Reading these bits will result in an indeterminate value; writes have no effect.
3:0 ID[11:8]	**Part Identification Number** — Each derivative in the HCS08 Family has a unique identification number. The MC9S08SC4 is hard coded to the value 0x02B. See also ID bits in Table 5-8.

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	ID7	ID6	ID5	ID4	ID3	ID2	ID1	ID0
W								
Reset:	0	0	1	0	1	0	1	1

= Unimplemented or Reserved

Figure 5-7. System Device Identification Register — Low (SDIDL)

Table 5-8. SDIDL Register Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7:0 ID[7:0]	**Part Identification Number** — Each derivative in the HCS08 Family has a unique identification number. The MC9S08SC4 is hard coded to the value 0x02B. See also ID bits in Table 5-7.

5.7.6 System Power Management Status and Control 1 Register (SPMSC1)

This high page register contains status and control bits to support the low voltage detect function, and to enable the bandgap voltage reference for use by the ADC module.

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	LVWF[1]	0	LVWIE	LVDRE[2]	LVDSE	LVDE[2]	0	BGBE
W		LVWACK						
Reset:	0	0	0	1	1	1	0	0

= Unimplemented or Reserved

[1] LVWF will be set in the case when V_{Supply} transitions below the trip point or after reset and V_{Supply} is already below V_{LVW}

[2] This bit can be written only one time after reset. Additional writes are ignored.

Figure 5-8. System Power Management Status and Control 1 Register (SPMSC1)

Table 5-9. SPMSC1 Register Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7 LVWF	**Low-Voltage Warning Flag** — The LVWF bit indicates the low voltage warning status. 0 Low voltage warning is not present. 1 Low voltage warning is present or was present.
6 LVWACK	**Low-Voltage Warning Acknowledge** — The LVWF bit indicates the low voltage warning status.Writing a 1 to LVWACK clears LVWF to a 0 if a low voltage warning is not present.
5 LVWIE	**Low-Voltage Warning Interrupt Enable** — This bit enables hardware interrupt requests for LVWF. 0 Hardware interrupt disabled (use polling). 1 Request a hardware interrupt when LVWF = 1.
4 LVDRE	**Low-Voltage Detect Reset Enable** — This write-once bit enables LVD events to generate a hardware reset (provided LVDE = 1). 0 LVD events do not generate hardware resets. 1 Force an MCU reset when an enabled low-voltage detect event occurs.
3 LVDSE	**Low-Voltage Detect Stop Enable** — Provided LVDE = 1, this control bit determines whether the low-voltage detect function operates when the MCU is in stop mode. 0 Low-voltage detect disabled during stop mode. 1 Low-voltage detect enabled during stop mode.
2 LVDE	**Low-Voltage Detect Enable** — This write-once bit enables low-voltage detect logic and qualifies the operation of other bits in this register. 0 LVD logic disabled. 1 LVD logic enabled.
0 BGBE	**Bandgap Buffer Enable** — This bit enables an internal buffer for the bandgap voltage reference for use by the ADC module on one of its internal channels. 0 Bandgap buffer disabled. 1 Bandgap buffer enabled.

5.7.7 System Power Management Status and Control 2 Register (SPMSC2)

This register is used to report the status of the low voltage warning function, and to configure the stop mode behavior of the MCU.

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0	0	LVDV[1]	LVWV	PPDF	0	0	PPDC[2]
W						PPDACK		
Power-on Reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
LVD Reset:	0	0	u	u	0	0	0	0
Any other Reset:	0	0	u	u	0	0	0	0

= Unimplemented or Reserved   u = Unaffected by reset

1 This bit can be written only one time after power-on reset. Additional writes are ignored.

2 This bit can be written only one time after reset. Additional writes are ignored.

Figure 5-9. System Power Management Status and Control 2 Register (SPMSC2)

Table 5-10. SPMSC2 Register Field Descriptions

Field	Description
5 LVDV	**Low-Voltage Detect Voltage Select** — This write-once bit selects the low voltage detect (LVD) trip point setting. It also selects the warning voltage range. See Table 5-11.
4 LVWV	**Low-Voltage Warning Voltage Select** — This bit selects the low voltage warning (LVW) trip point voltage. See Table 5-11.
3 PPDF	**Partial Power Down Flag** — This read-only status bit indicates that the MCU has recovered from stop2 mode. 0 MCU has not recovered from stop2 mode. 1 MCU recovered from stop2 mode.
2 PPDACK	**Partial Power Down Acknowledge** — Writing a 1 to PPDACK clears the PPDF bit
0 PPDC	**Partial Power Down Control** — This write-once bit controls whether stop2 or stop3 mode is selected. 0 Stop3 mode enabled. 1 Stop2, partial power down, mode enabled.

Table 5-11. LVD and LVW trip point typical values[1]

LVDV:LVWV	LVW Trip Point	LVD Trip Point
0:0	V_{LVW0} = 2.74 V	V_{LVD0} = 2.56 V
0:1	V_{LVW1} = 2.92 V	
1:0	V_{LVW2} = 4.3 V	V_{LVD1} = 4.0 V
1:1	V_{LVW3} = 4.6 V	

1 See MC9S08SC4 datasheet for minimum and maximum values.

Chapter 6
Parallel Input/Output Control

This section explains software controls related to parallel input/output (I/O) and pin control. The MC9S08SC4 has two parallel I/O ports which include a total of 12 I/O pins. See Chapter 2, “Pins and Connections,” for more information about pin assignments and external hardware considerations of these pins.

Many of these pins are shared with on-chip peripherals such as timer systems, communication systems, or pin interrupts as shown in Table 2-1. The peripheral modules have priority over the general-purpose I/O functions so that when a peripheral is enabled, the I/O functions associated with the shared pins are disabled.

After reset, the shared peripheral functions are disabled and the pins are configured as inputs (PTxDDn = 0). The pin control functions for each pin are configured after reset as follows: slew rate disabled (PTxSEn = 0), low drive strength selected (PTxDSn = 0), and internal pull-ups disabled (PTxPEn = 0).

6.1 Port Data and Data Direction

Reading and writing of parallel I/Os are performed through the port data registers. The direction, either input or output, is controlled through the port data direction registers. The parallel I/O port function for an individual pin is illustrated in the block diagram shown in Figure 6-1.

The data direction control bit (PTxDDn) determines whether the output buffer for the associated pin is enabled, and also controls the source for port data register reads. The input buffer for the associated pin is always enabled unless the pin is enabled as an analog function or is an output-only pin.

When a shared digital function is enabled for a pin, the output buffer is controlled by the shared function. However, the data direction register bit will continue to control the source for reads of the port data register.

When a shared analog function is enabled for a pin, both the input and output buffers are disabled. A value of 0 is read for any port data bit where the bit is an input (PTxDDn = 0) and the input buffer is disabled. In general, whenever a pin is shared with both an alternate digital function and an analog function, the analog function has priority such that if both the digital and analog functions are enabled, the analog function controls the pin.

It is a good programming practice to write to the port data register before changing the direction of a port pin to become an output. This ensures that the pin will not be driven momentarily with an old data value that happened to be in the port data register.

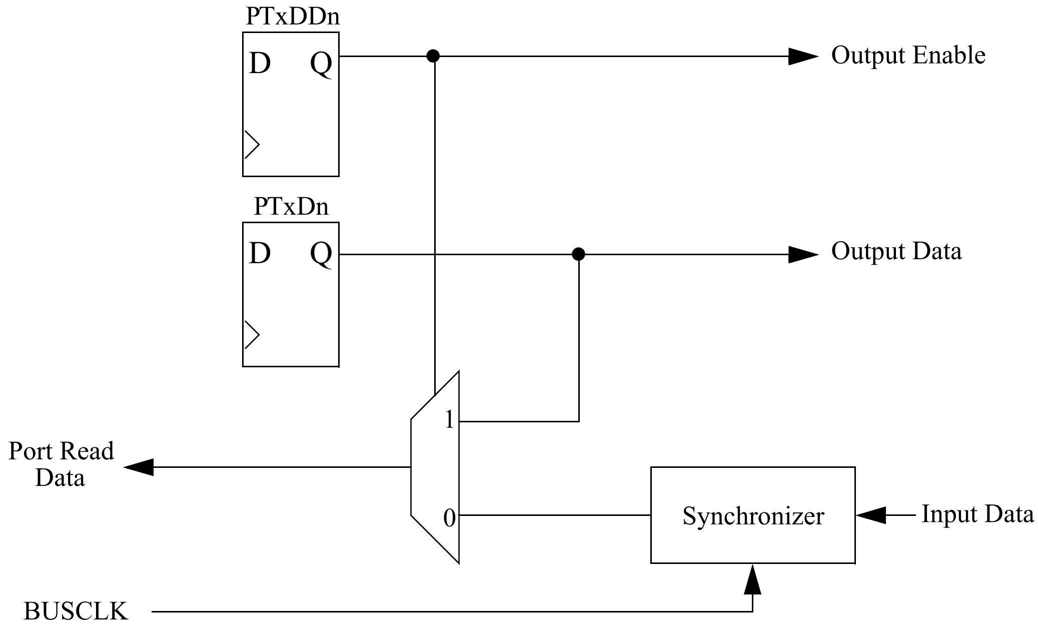


Figure 6-1. Parallel I/O Block Diagram

6.2 Pull-up, Slew Rate, and Drive Strength

Associated with the parallel I/O ports is a set of registers located in the high page register space that operate independently of the parallel I/O registers. These registers are used to control pull-ups, slew rate, and drive strength for the pins.

An internal pull-up device can be enabled for each port pin by setting the corresponding bit in the pull-up enable register (PTxPEn). The pull-up device is disabled if the pin is configured as an output by the parallel I/O control logic or any shared peripheral function regardless of the state of the corresponding pull-up enable register bit. The pull-up device is also disabled if the pin is controlled by an analog function.

Slew rate control can be enabled for each port pin by setting the corresponding bit in the slew rate control register (PTxSEn). When enabled, slew control limits the rate at which an output can transition in order to reduce EMC emissions. Slew rate control has no effect on pins that are configured as inputs.

An output pin can be selected to have high output drive strength by setting the corresponding bit in the drive strength select register (PTxDSn). When high drive is selected, a pin is capable of sourcing and sinking greater current. Even though every I/O pin can be selected as high drive, ensure that the total current source and sink limits for the MCU are not exceeded. Refer to MC9S08SC4 Datasheet for more information. Drive strength selection is intended to affect the DC behavior of I/O pins. However, the AC behavior is also affected. High drive allows a pin to drive a greater load with the same switching speed as a low drive enabled pin into a smaller load. Because of this, the EMC emissions may be affected by enabling pins as high drive.

6.3 Pin Interrupts

Port A[3:0] and port B[3:0] pins can be configured as external interrupt inputs and as an external means of waking the MCU from stop3 or wait low-power modes.

The block diagram for the pin interrupts is shown Figure 6-2.

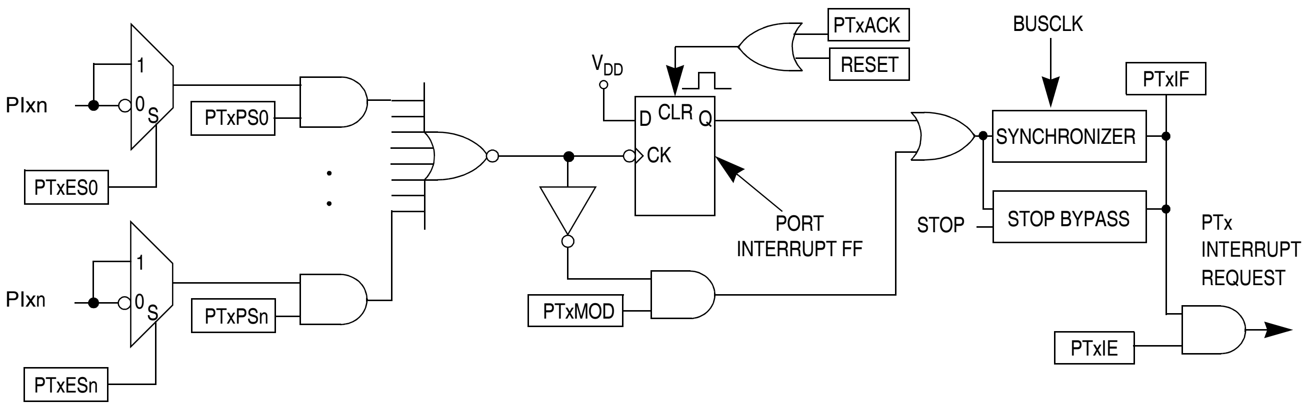


Figure 6-2. Pin Interrupt Block Diagram

Writing to the PTxPSn bits in the port interrupt pin enable register (PTxPS) independently enables or disables each port pin interrupt. Each port can be configured as edge sensitive or edge and level sensitive based on the PTxMOD bit in the port interrupt status and control register (PTxSC). Edge sensitivity can be software programmed to be either falling or rising; the level can be either low or high. The polarity of the edge or edge and level sensitivity is selected using the PTxESn bits in the port interrupt edge select register (PTxES).

Synchronous logic is used to detect edges. Prior to detecting an edge, enabled pin interrupt inputs must be at the deasserted logic level. A falling edge is detected when an enabled port input signal is seen as a logic 1 (the deasserted level) during one bus cycle and then a logic 0 (the asserted level) during the next cycle. A rising edge is detected when the input signal is seen as a logic 0 during one bus cycle and then a logic 1 during the next cycle.

6.3.1 Edge Only Sensitivity

A valid edge on an enabled pin interrupt will set PTxIF in PTxSC. If PTxIE in PTxSC is set, an interrupt request will be presented to the CPU. Clearing of PTxIF is accomplished by writing a 1 to PTxACK in PTxSC.

6.3.2 Edge and Level Sensitivity

A valid edge or level on an enabled pin interrupt will set PTxIF in PTxSC. If PTxIE in PTxSC is set, an interrupt request will be presented to the CPU. Clearing of PTxIF is accomplished by writing a 1 to PTxACK in PTxSC provided all enabled pin interrupt inputs are at their deasserted levels. PTxIF will remain set if any enabled pin interrupt is asserted while attempting to clear by writing a 1 to PTxACK.

6.3.3 Pull-up/Pull-down Resistors

The pin interrupts can be configured to use an internal pull-up/pull-down resistor using the associated I/O port pull-up enable register. If an internal resistor is enabled, the PTxES register is used to select whether the resistor is a pull-up (PTxESn = 0) or a pull-down (PTxESn = 1).

6.3.4 Pin Interrupt Initialization

When a pin interrupt is first enabled, it is possible to get a false interrupt flag. To prevent a false interrupt request during pin interrupt initialization, the user should do the following:

1. Mask interrupts by clearing PTxIE in PTxSC.
2. Select the pin polarity by setting the appropriate PTxESn bits in PTxES.
3. If using internal pull-up/pull-down device, configure the associated pull enable bits in PTxPE.
4. Enable the interrupt pins by setting the appropriate PTxPEn bits in PTxPE.
5. Write to PTxACK in PTxSC to clear any false interrupts.
6. Set PTxIE in PTxSC to enable interrupts.

6.4 Pin Behavior in Stop Modes

Pin behavior following execution of a STOP instruction depends on the stop mode that is entered. An explanation of pin behavior for the various stop modes follows:

- Stop2 mode is a partial power-down mode, whereby I/O latches are maintained in their state as before the STOP instruction was executed. CPU register status and the state of I/O registers should be saved in RAM before the STOP instruction is executed to place the MCU in stop2 mode. Upon recovery from stop2 mode, before accessing any I/O, the user should examine the state of the PPDF bit in the SPMSC2 register. If the PPDF bit is 0, I/O must be initialized as if a power on reset had occurred. If the PPDF bit is 1, peripherals may require initialization to be restored to their pre-stop condition. This can be done using data previously stored in RAM if it was saved before the STOP instruction was executed. The user must then write a 1 to the PPDACK bit in the SPMSC2 register. Access to I/O is now permitted again in the user application program.
- In stop3 mode, all I/O is maintained because internal logic circuity stays powered up. Upon recovery, normal I/O function is available to the user.

6.5 Parallel I/O and Pin Control Registers

This section provides information about the registers associated with the parallel I/O ports. The data and data direction registers are located in page zero of the memory map. The pull up, slew rate, drive strength, and interrupt control registers are located in the high page section of the memory map.

Refer to tables in Chapter 4, “Memory,” for the absolute address assignments for all parallel I/O and their pin control registers. This section refers to registers and control bits only by their names. A Freescale Semiconductor-provided equate or header file normally is used to translate these names into the appropriate absolute addresses.

6.5.1 Port A Registers

Port A is controlled by the registers listed below.

6.5.1.1 Port A Data Register (PTAD)

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0	0	0	0	PTAD3	PTAD2	PTAD1	PTAD0
W								
Reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 6-3. Port A Data Register (PTAD)

Table 6-1. PTAD Register Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7:4 Reserved	**Reserved Bits** — These bits are unused on this MCU, writes have no affect and could read as 1s or 0s.
3:0 PTAD[3:0]	**Port A Data Register Bits** — For port A pins that are inputs, reads return the logic level on the pin. For port A pins that are configured as outputs, reads return the last value written to this register. Writes are latched into all bits of this register. For port A pins that are configured as outputs, the logic level is driven out the corresponding MCU pin. Reset forces PTAD to all 0s, but these 0s are not driven out the corresponding pins because reset also configures all port pins as high-impedance inputs with pull-ups/pull-downs disabled.

6.5.1.2 Port A Data Direction Register (PTADD)

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0	0	0	0	PTADD3	PTADD2	PTADD1	PTADD0
W								
Reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 6-4. Port A Data Direction Register (PTADD)

Table 6-2. PTADD Register Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7:4 Reserved	**Reserved Bits** — These bits are unused on this MCU, writes have no affect and could read as 1s or 0s.
3:0 PTADD[3:0]	**Data Direction for Port A Bits** — These read/write bits control the direction of port A pins and what is read for PTAD reads. 0 Input (output driver disabled) and reads return the pin value. 1 Output driver enabled for port A bit n and PTAD reads return the contents of PTADn.

6.5.1.3 Port A Pull Enable Register (PTAPE)

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0	0	0	0	PTAPE3	PTAPE2	PTAPE1	PTAPE0
W								
Reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 6-5. Internal Pull Enable for Port A Register (PTAPE)

Table 6-3. PTAPE Register Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7:4 Reserved	**Reserved Bits** — These bits are unused on this MCU, writes have no affect and could read as 1s or 0s.
3:0 PTAPE[3:0]	**Internal Pull Enable for Port A Bits** — Each of these control bits determines if the internal pull-up or pull-down device is enabled for the associated PTA pin. For port A pins that are configured as outputs, these bits have no effect and the internal pull devices are disabled. 0 Internal pull-up/pull-down device disabled for port A bit n. 1 Internal pull-up/pull-down device enabled for port A bit n.

NOTE

Pull-down devices only apply when using pin interrupt functions, when corresponding edge-select and pin-select functions are configured.

6.5.1.4 Port A Slew Rate Enable Register (PTASE)

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0	0	0	0	PTASE3	PTASE2	PTASE1	PTASE0
W								
Reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 6-6. Slew Rate Enable for Port A Register (PTASE)

Table 6-4. PTASE Register Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7:4 Reserved	**Reserved Bits** — These bits are unused on this MCU, writes have no affect and could read as 1s or 0s.
3:0 PTASE[3:0]	**Output Slew Rate Enable for Port A Bits** — Each of these control bits determines if the output slew rate control is enabled for the associated PTA pin. For port A pins that are configured as inputs, these bits have no effect. 0 Output slew rate control disabled for port A bit n. 1 Output slew rate control enabled for port A bit n.

6.5.1.5 Port A Drive Strength Selection Register (PTADS)

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0	0	0	0	PTADS3	PTADS2	PTADS1	PTADS0
W								
Reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 6-7. Drive Strength Selection for Port A Register (PTADS)

Table 6-5. PTADS Register Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7:4 Reserved	**Reserved Bits** — These bits are unused on this MCU, writes have no affect and could read as 1s or 0s.
3:0 PTADS[3:0]	**Output Drive Strength Selection for Port A Bits** — Each of these control bits selects between low and high output drive for the associated PTA pin. For port A pins that are configured as inputs, these bits have no effect. 0 Low output drive strength selected for port A bit n. 1 High output drive strength selected for port A bit n.

6.5.1.6 Port A Interrupt Status and Control Register (PTASC)

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0	0	0	0	PTAIF	0	PTAIE	PTAMOD
W						PTAACK		
Reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 6-8. Port A Interrupt Status and Control Register (PTASC)

Table 6-6. PTASC Register Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7:4 Reserved	**Reserved Bits** — These bits are unused on this MCU, writes have no affect and could read as 1s or 0s.
3 PTAIF	**Port A Interrupt Flag** — PTAIF indicates when a port A interrupt is detected. Writes have no effect on PTAIF. 0 No port A interrupt detected. 1 Port A interrupt detected.
2 PTAACK	**Port A Interrupt Acknowledge** — Writing a 1 to PTAACK is part of the flag clearing mechanism. PTAACK always reads as 0.
1 PTAIE	**Port A Interrupt Enable** — PTAIE determines whether a port A interrupt is requested. 0 Port A interrupt request not enabled. 1 Port A interrupt request enabled.
0 PTAMOD	**Port A Detection Mode** — PTAMOD (along with the PTAES bits) controls the detection mode of the port A interrupt pins. 0 Port A pins detect edges only. 1 Port A pins detect both edges and levels.

6.5.1.7 Port A Interrupt Pin Select Register (PTAPS)

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0	0	0	0	PTAPS3	PTAPS2	PTAPS1	PTAPS0
W								
Reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 6-9. Port A Interrupt Pin Select Register (PTAPS)

Table 6-7. PTAPS Register Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7:4 Reserved	**Reserved Bits** — These bits are unused on this MCU, writes have no affect and could read as 1s or 0s.
3:0 PTAPS[3:0]	**Port A Interrupt Pin Selects** — Each of the PTAPSn bits enable the corresponding port A interrupt pin. 0 Pin not enabled as interrupt. 1 Pin enabled as interrupt.

6.5.1.8 Port A Interrupt Edge Select Register (PTAES)

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0	0	0	0	PTAES3	PTAES2	PTAES1	PTAES0
W								
Reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 6-10. Port A Edge Select Register (PTAES)

Table 6-8. PTAES Register Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7:4 Reserved	**Reserved Bits** — These bits are unused on this MCU, writes have no affect and could read as 1s or 0s.
3:0 PTAES[3:0]	**Port A Edge Selects** — Each of the PTAESn bits serves a dual purpose by selecting the polarity of the active interrupt edge as well as selecting a pull-up or pull-down device if enabled. 0 A pull-up device is connected to the associated pin and detects falling edge/low level for interrupt generation. 1 A pull-down device is connected to the associated pin and detects rising edge/high level for interrupt generation.

6.5.2 Port B Registers

Port B is controlled by the registers listed below.

6.5.2.1 Port B Data Register (PTBD)

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	PTBD7	PTBD6	PTBD5	PTBD4	PTBD3	PTBD2	PTBD1	PTBD0
Reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 6-11. Port B Data Register (PTBD)

Table 6-9. PTBD Register Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7:0 PTBD[7:0]	**Port B Data Register Bits** — For port B pins that are inputs, reads return the logic level on the pin. For port B pins that are configured as outputs, reads return the last value written to this register. Writes are latched into all bits of this register. For port B pins that are configured as outputs, the logic level is driven out the corresponding MCU pin. Reset forces PTBD to all 0s, but these 0s are not driven out the corresponding pins because reset also configures all port pins as high-impedance inputs with pull-ups/pull-downs disabled.

6.5.2.2 Port B Data Direction Register (PTBDD)

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	PTBDD7	PTBDD6	PTBDD5	PTBDD4	PTBDD3	PTBDD2	PTBDD1	PTBDD0
Reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 6-12. Port B Data Direction Register (PTBDD)

Table 6-10. PTBDD Register Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7:0 PTBDD[7:0]	**Data Direction for Port B Bits** — These read/write bits control the direction of port B pins and what is read for PTBD reads. 0 Input (output driver disabled) and reads return the pin value. 1 Output driver enabled for port B bit n and PTBD reads return the contents of PTBDn.

6.5.2.3 Port B Pull Enable Register (PTBPE)

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	PTBPE7	PTBPE6	PTBPE5	PTBPE4	PTBPE3	PTBPE2	PTBPE1	PTBPE0
Reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 6-13. Internal Pull Enable for Port B Register (PTBPE)

Table 6-11. PTBPE Register Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7:0 PTBPE[7:0]	**Internal Pull Enable for Port B Bits** — Each of these control bits determines if the internal pull-up or pull-down device is enabled for the associated PTB pin. For port B pins that are configured as outputs, these bits have no effect and the internal pull devices are disabled. 0 Internal pull-up/pull-down device disabled for port B bit n. 1 Internal pull-up/pull-down device enabled for port B bit n.

NOTE

Pull-down devices only apply when using pin interrupt functions, when corresponding edge-select and pin-select functions are configured.

6.5.2.4 Port B Slew Rate Enable Register (PTBSE)

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	PTBSE7	PTBSE6	PTBSE5	PTBSE4	PTBSE3	PTBSE2	PTBSE1	PTBSE0
Reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 6-14. Slew Rate Enable for Port B Register (PTBSE)

Table 6-12. PTBSE Register Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7:0 PTBSE[7:0]	**Output Slew Rate Enable for Port B Bits** — Each of these control bits determines if the output slew rate control is enabled for the associated PTB pin. For port B pins that are configured as inputs, these bits have no effect. 0 Output slew rate control disabled for port B bit n. 1 Output slew rate control enabled for port B bit n.

6.5.2.5 Port B Drive Strength Selection Register (PTBDS)

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R/W	PTBDS7	PTBDS6	PTBDS5	PTBDS4	PTBDS3	PTBDS2	PTBDS1	PTBDS0
Reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 6-15. Drive Strength Selection for Port B Register (PTBDS)

Table 6-13. PTBDS Register Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7:0 PTBDS[7:0]	**Output Drive Strength Selection for Port B Bits** — Each of these control bits selects between low and high output drive for the associated PTB pin. For port B pins that are configured as inputs, these bits have no effect. 0 Low output drive strength selected for port B bit n. 1 High output drive strength selected for port B bit n.

6.5.2.6 Port B Interrupt Status and Control Register (PTBSC)

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0	0	0	0	PTBIF	0	PTBIE	PTBMOD
W						PTBACK		
Reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 6-16. Port B Interrupt Status and Control Register (PTBSC)

Table 6-14. PTBSC Register Field Descriptions

Field	Description
3 PTBIF	**Port B Interrupt Flag** — PTBIF indicates when a Port B interrupt is detected. Writes have no effect on PTBIF. 0 No Port B interrupt detected. 1 Port B interrupt detected.
2 PTBACK	**Port B Interrupt Acknowledge** — Writing a 1 to PTBACK is part of the flag clearing mechanism. PTBACK always reads as 0.
1 PTBIE	**Port B Interrupt Enable** — PTBIE determines whether a port B interrupt is requested. 0 Port B interrupt request not enabled. 1 Port B interrupt request enabled.
0 PTBMOD	**Port B Detection Mode** — PTBMOD (along with the PTBES bits) controls the detection mode of the port B interrupt pins. 0 Port B pins detect edges only. 1 Port B pins detect both edges and levels.

6.5.2.7 Port B Interrupt Pin Select Register (PTBPS)

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0	0	0	0	PTBPS3	PTBPS2	PTBPS1	PTBPS0
W								
Reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 6-17. Port B Interrupt Pin Select Register (PTBPS)

Table 6-15. PTBPS Register Field Descriptions

Field	Description
3:0 PTBPS[3:0]	**Port B Interrupt Pin Selects** — Each of the PTBPSn bits enable the corresponding port B interrupt pin. 0 Pin not enabled as interrupt. 1 Pin enabled as interrupt.

6.5.2.8 Port B Interrupt Edge Select Register (PTBES)

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0	0	0	0	PTBES3	PTBES2	PTBES1	PTBES0
W								
Reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 6-18. Port B Edge Select Register (PTBES)

Table 6-16. PTBES Register Field Descriptions

Field	Description
3:0 PTBES[3:0]	**Port B Edge Selects** — Each of the PTBESn bits serves a dual purpose by selecting the polarity of the active interrupt edge as well as selecting a pull-up or pull-down device if enabled. 0 A pull-up device is connected to the associated pin and detects falling edge/low level for interrupt generation. 1 A pull-down device is connected to the associated pin and detects rising edge/high level for interrupt generation.

Chapter 7
Central Processor Unit (S08CPUV5)

7.1 Introduction

This section provides summary information about the registers, addressing modes, and instruction set of the CPU of the HCS08 Family. For a more detailed discussion, refer to the *HCS08 Family Reference Manual, volume 1,* Freescale Semiconductor document order number HCS08RMV1/D.

The HCS08 CPU is fully source- and object-code-compatible with the M68HC08 CPU. Several instructions and enhanced addressing modes were added to improve C compiler efficiency and to support a new background debug system which replaces the monitor mode of earlier M68HC08 microcontrollers (MCU).

7.1.1 Features

Features of the HCS08 CPU include:

- Object code fully upward-compatible with M68HC05 and M68HC08 Families
- 16-bit stack pointer (any size stack anywhere in 64-KB CPU address space)
- 16-bit index register (H:X) with powerful indexed addressing modes
- 8-bit accumulator (A)
- Many instructions treat X as a second general-purpose 8-bit register
- Seven addressing modes:
  - Inherent — Operands in internal registers
  - Relative — 8-bit signed offset to branch destination
  - Immediate — Operand in next object code byte(s)
  - Direct — Operand in memory at 0x0000–0x00FF
  - Extended — Operand anywhere in 64-Kbyte address space
  - Indexed relative to H:X — Five submodes including auto increment
  - Indexed relative to SP — Improves C efficiency dramatically
- Memory-to-memory data move instructions with four address mode combinations
- Overflow, half-carry, negative, zero, and carry condition codes support conditional branching on the results of signed, unsigned, and binary-coded decimal (BCD) operations
- Efficient bit manipulation instructions
- Fast 8-bit by 8-bit multiply and 16-bit by 8-bit divide instructions
- STOP and WAIT instructions to invoke low-power operating modes

7.2 Programmer's Model and CPU Registers

Figure 7-1 shows the five CPU registers. CPU registers are not part of the memory map.

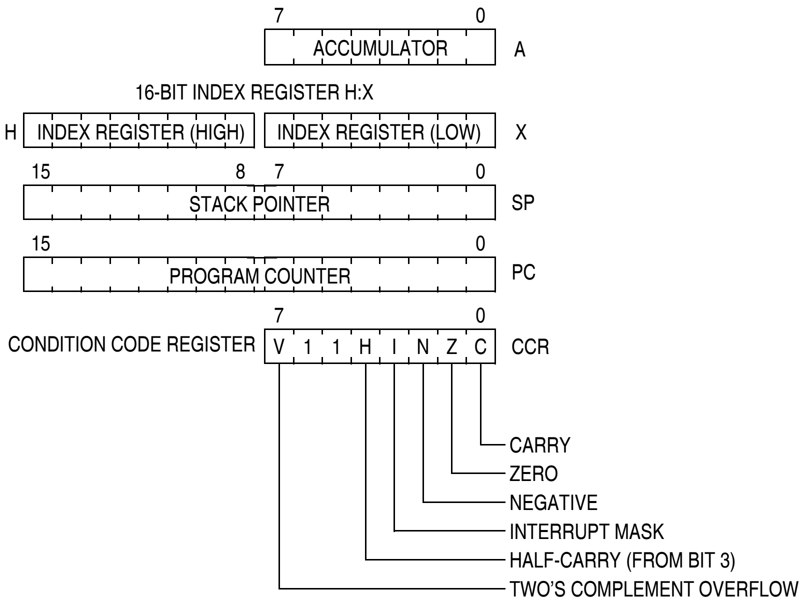


Figure 7-1. CPU Registers

7.2.1 Accumulator (A)

The A accumulator is a general-purpose 8-bit register. One operand input to the arithmetic logic unit (ALU) is connected to the accumulator and the ALU results are often stored into the A accumulator after arithmetic and logical operations. The accumulator can be loaded from memory using various addressing modes to specify the address where the loaded data comes from, or the contents of A can be stored to memory using various addressing modes to specify the address where data from A will be stored.

Reset has no effect on the contents of the A accumulator.

7.2.2 Index Register (H:X)

This 16-bit register is actually two separate 8-bit registers (H and X), which often work together as a 16-bit address pointer where H holds the upper byte of an address and X holds the lower byte of the address. All indexed addressing mode instructions use the full 16-bit value in H:X as an index reference pointer; however, for compatibility with the earlier M68HC05 Family, some instructions operate only on the low-order 8-bit half (X).

Many instructions treat X as a second general-purpose 8-bit register that can be used to hold 8-bit data values. X can be cleared, incremented, decremented, complemented, negated, shifted, or rotated. Transfer instructions allow data to be transferred from A or transferred to A where arithmetic and logical operations can then be performed.

For compatibility with the earlier M68HC05 Family, H is forced to 0x00 during reset. Reset has no effect on the contents of X.

7.2.3 Stack Pointer (SP)

This 16-bit address pointer register points at the next available location on the automatic last-in-first-out (LIFO) stack. The stack may be located anywhere in the 64-Kbyte address space that has RAM and can be any size up to the amount of available RAM. The stack is used to automatically save the return address for subroutine calls, the return address and CPU registers during interrupts, and for local variables. The AIS (add immediate to stack pointer) instruction adds an 8-bit signed immediate value to SP. This is most often used to allocate or deallocate space for local variables on the stack.

SP is forced to 0x00FF at reset for compatibility with the earlier M68HC05 Family. HCS08 programs normally change the value in SP to the address of the last location (highest address) in on-chip RAM during reset initialization to free up direct page RAM (from the end of the on-chip registers to 0x00FF).

The RSP (reset stack pointer) instruction was included for compatibility with the M68HC05 Family and is seldom used in new HCS08 programs because it only affects the low-order half of the stack pointer.

7.2.4 Program Counter (PC)

The program counter is a 16-bit register that contains the address of the next instruction or operand to be fetched.

During normal program execution, the program counter automatically increments to the next sequential memory location every time an instruction or operand is fetched. Jump, branch, interrupt, and return operations load the program counter with an address other than that of the next sequential location. This is called a change-of-flow.

During reset, the program counter is loaded with the reset vector that is located at 0xFFFE and 0xFFFF. The vector stored there is the address of the first instruction that will be executed after exiting the reset state.

7.2.5 Condition Code Register (CCR)

The 8-bit condition code register contains the interrupt mask (I) and five flags that indicate the results of the instruction just executed. Bits 6 and 5 are set permanently to 1. The following paragraphs describe the functions of the condition code bits in general terms. For a more detailed explanation of how each instruction sets the CCR bits, refer to the *HCS08 Family Reference Manual, volume 1,* Freescale Semiconductor document order number HCS08RMv1.

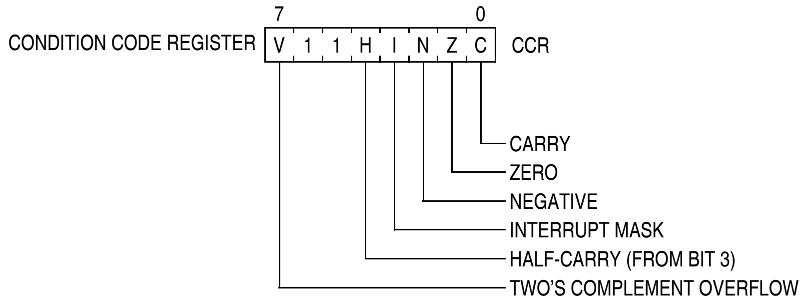


Figure 7-2. Condition Code Register

Table 7-1. CCR Register Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7 V	**Two's Complement Overflow Flag** — The CPU sets the overflow flag when a two's complement overflow occurs. The signed branch instructions BGT, BGE, BLE, and BLT use the overflow flag. 0 No overflow 1 Overflow
4 H	**Half-Carry Flag** — The CPU sets the half-carry flag when a carry occurs between accumulator bits 3 and 4 during an add-without-carry (ADD) or add-with-carry (ADC) operation. The half-carry flag is required for binary-coded decimal (BCD) arithmetic operations. The DAA instruction uses the states of the H and C condition code bits to automatically add a correction value to the result from a previous ADD or ADC on BCD operands to correct the result to a valid BCD value. 0 No carry between bits 3 and 4 1 Carry between bits 3 and 4
3 I	**Interrupt Mask Bit** — When the interrupt mask is set, all maskable CPU interrupts are disabled. CPU interrupts are enabled when the interrupt mask is cleared. When a CPU interrupt occurs, the interrupt mask is set automatically after the CPU registers are saved on the stack, but before the first instruction of the interrupt service routine is executed. Interrupts are not recognized at the instruction boundary after any instruction that clears I (CLI or TAP). This ensures that the next instruction after a CLI or TAP will always be executed without the possibility of an intervening interrupt, provided I was set. 0 Interrupts enabled 1 Interrupts disabled
2 N	**Negative Flag** — The CPU sets the negative flag when an arithmetic operation, logic operation, or data manipulation produces a negative result, setting bit 7 of the result. Simply loading or storing an 8-bit or 16-bit value causes N to be set if the most significant bit of the loaded or stored value was 1. 0 Non-negative result 1 Negative result
1 Z	**Zero Flag** — The CPU sets the zero flag when an arithmetic operation, logic operation, or data manipulation produces a result of 0x00 or 0x0000. Simply loading or storing an 8-bit or 16-bit value causes Z to be set if the loaded or stored value was all 0s. 0 Non-zero result 1 Zero result
0 C	**Carry/Borrow Flag** — The CPU sets the carry/borrow flag when an addition operation produces a carry out of bit 7 of the accumulator or when a subtraction operation requires a borrow. Some instructions — such as bit test and branch, shift, and rotate — also clear or set the carry/borrow flag. 0 No carry out of bit 7 1 Carry out of bit 7

7.3 Addressing Modes

Addressing modes define the way the CPU accesses operands and data. In the HCS08, memory, status and control registers, and input/output (I/O) ports share a single 64-Kbyte CPU address space. This arrangement means that the same instructions that access variables in RAM can also be used to access I/O and control registers or nonvolatile program space.

Some instructions use more than one addressing mode. For instance, move instructions use one addressing mode to specify the source operand and a second addressing mode to specify the destination address. Instructions such as BRCLR, BRSET, CBEQ, and DBNZ use one addressing mode to specify the location of an operand for a test and then use relative addressing mode to specify the branch destination address when the tested condition is true. For BRCLR, BRSET, CBEQ, and DBNZ, the addressing mode listed in the instruction set tables is the addressing mode needed to access the operand to be tested, and relative addressing mode is implied for the branch destination.

7.3.1 Inherent Addressing Mode (INH)

In this addressing mode, operands needed to complete the instruction (if any) are located within CPU registers so the CPU does not need to access memory to get any operands.

7.3.2 Relative Addressing Mode (REL)

Relative addressing mode is used to specify the destination location for branch instructions. A signed 8-bit offset value is located in the memory location immediately following the opcode. During execution, if the branch condition is true, the signed offset is sign-extended to a 16-bit value and is added to the current contents of the program counter, which causes program execution to continue at the branch destination address.

7.3.3 Immediate Addressing Mode (IMM)

In immediate addressing mode, the operand needed to complete the instruction is included in the object code immediately following the instruction opcode in memory. In the case of a 16-bit immediate operand, the high-order byte is located in the next memory location after the opcode, and the low-order byte is located in the next memory location after that.

7.3.4 Direct Addressing Mode (DIR)

In direct addressing mode, the instruction includes the low-order eight bits of an address in the direct page (0x0000–0x00FF). During execution a 16-bit address is formed by concatenating an implied 0x00 for the high-order half of the address and the direct address from the instruction to get the 16-bit address where the desired operand is located. This is faster and more memory efficient than specifying a complete 16-bit address for the operand.

7.3.5 Extended Addressing Mode (EXT)

In extended addressing mode, the full 16-bit address of the operand is located in the next two bytes of program memory after the opcode (high byte first).

7.3.6 Indexed Addressing Mode

Indexed addressing mode has seven variations including five that use the 16-bit H:X index register pair and two that use the stack pointer as the base reference.

7.3.6.1 Indexed, No Offset (IX)

This variation of indexed addressing uses the 16-bit value in the H:X index register pair as the address of the operand needed to complete the instruction.

7.3.6.2 Indexed, No Offset with Post Increment (IX+)

This variation of indexed addressing uses the 16-bit value in the H:X index register pair as the address of the operand needed to complete the instruction. The index register pair is then incremented (H:X = H:X + 0x0001) after the operand has been fetched. This addressing mode is only used for MOV and CBEQ instructions.

7.3.6.3 Indexed, 8-Bit Offset (IX1)

This variation of indexed addressing uses the 16-bit value in the H:X index register pair plus an unsigned 8-bit offset included in the instruction as the address of the operand needed to complete the instruction.

7.3.6.4 Indexed, 8-Bit Offset with Post Increment (IX1+)

This variation of indexed addressing uses the 16-bit value in the H:X index register pair plus an unsigned 8-bit offset included in the instruction as the address of the operand needed to complete the instruction. The index register pair is then incremented (H:X = H:X + 0x0001) after the operand has been fetched. This addressing mode is used only for the CBEQ instruction.

7.3.6.5 Indexed, 16-Bit Offset (IX2)

This variation of indexed addressing uses the 16-bit value in the H:X index register pair plus a 16-bit offset included in the instruction as the address of the operand needed to complete the instruction.

7.3.6.6 SP-Relative, 8-Bit Offset (SP1)

This variation of indexed addressing uses the 16-bit value in the stack pointer (SP) plus an unsigned 8-bit offset included in the instruction as the address of the operand needed to complete the instruction.

7.3.6.7 SP-Relative, 16-Bit Offset (SP2)

This variation of indexed addressing uses the 16-bit value in the stack pointer (SP) plus a 16-bit offset included in the instruction as the address of the operand needed to complete the instruction.

7.4 Special Operations

The CPU performs a few special operations that are similar to instructions but do not have opcodes like other CPU instructions. In addition, a few instructions such as STOP and WAIT directly affect other MCU circuitry. This section provides additional information about these operations.

7.4.1 Reset Sequence

Reset can be caused by a power-on-reset (POR) event, internal conditions such as the COP (computer operating properly) watchdog, or by assertion of an external active-low reset pin. When a reset event occurs, the CPU immediately stops whatever it is doing (the MCU does not wait for an instruction boundary before responding to a reset event). For a more detailed discussion about how the MCU recognizes resets and determines the source, refer to the Resets, Interrupts, and System Configuration sections.

The reset event is considered concluded when the sequence to determine whether the reset came from an internal source is done and when the reset pin is no longer asserted. At the conclusion of a reset event, the CPU performs a 6-cycle sequence to fetch the reset vector from 0xFFFE and 0xFFFF and to fill the instruction queue in preparation for execution of the first program instruction.

7.4.2 Interrupt Sequence

When an interrupt is requested, the CPU completes the current instruction before responding to the interrupt. At this point, the program counter is pointing at the start of the next instruction, which is where the CPU should return after servicing the interrupt. The CPU responds to an interrupt by performing the same sequence of operations as for a software interrupt (SWI) instruction, except the address used for the vector fetch is determined by the highest priority interrupt that is pending when the interrupt sequence started.

The CPU sequence for an interrupt is:

1. Store the contents of PCL, PCH, X, A, and CCR on the stack, in that order.
2. Set the I bit in the CCR.
3. Fetch the high-order half of the interrupt vector.
4. Fetch the low-order half of the interrupt vector.
5. Delay for one free bus cycle.
6. Fetch three bytes of program information starting at the address indicated by the interrupt vector to fill the instruction queue in preparation for execution of the first instruction in the interrupt service routine.

After the CCR contents are pushed onto the stack, the I bit in the CCR is set to prevent other interrupts while in the interrupt service routine. Although it is possible to clear the I bit with an instruction in the interrupt service routine, this would allow nesting of interrupts (which is not recommended because it leads to programs that are difficult to debug and maintain).

For compatibility with the earlier M68HC05 MCUs, the high-order half of the H:X index register pair (H) is not saved on the stack as part of the interrupt sequence. The user must use a PSHH instruction at the beginning of the service routine to save H and then use a PULH instruction just before the RTI that ends the interrupt service routine. It is not necessary to save H if you are certain that the interrupt service routine does not use any instructions or auto-increment addressing modes that might change the value of H.

The software interrupt (SWI) instruction is like a hardware interrupt except that it is not masked by the global I bit in the CCR and it is associated with an instruction opcode within the program so it is not asynchronous to program execution.

7.4.3 Wait Mode Operation

The WAIT instruction enables interrupts by clearing the I bit in the CCR. It then halts the clocks to the CPU to reduce overall power consumption while the CPU is waiting for the interrupt or reset event that will wake the CPU from wait mode. When an interrupt or reset event occurs, the CPU clocks will resume and the interrupt or reset event will be processed normally.

If a serial BACKGROUND command is issued to the MCU through the background debug interface while the CPU is in wait mode, CPU clocks will resume and the CPU will enter active background mode where other serial background commands can be processed. This ensures that a host development system can still gain access to a target MCU even if it is in wait mode.

7.4.4 Stop Mode Operation

Usually, all system clocks, including the crystal oscillator (when used), are halted during stop mode to minimize power consumption. In such systems, external circuitry is needed to control the time spent in stop mode and to issue a signal to wake up the target MCU when it is time to resume processing. Unlike the earlier M68HC05 and M68HC08 MCUs, the HCS08 can be configured to keep a minimum set of clocks running in stop mode. This optionally allows an internal periodic signal to wake the target MCU from stop mode.

When a host debug system is connected to the background debug pin (BKGD) and the ENBDM control bit has been set by a serial command through the background interface (or because the MCU was reset into active background mode), the oscillator is forced to remain active when the MCU enters stop mode. In this case, if a serial BACKGROUND command is issued to the MCU through the background debug interface while the CPU is in stop mode, CPU clocks will resume and the CPU will enter active background mode where other serial background commands can be processed. This ensures that a host development system can still gain access to a target MCU even if it is in stop mode.

Recovery from stop mode depends on the particular HCS08 and whether the oscillator was stopped in stop mode. Refer to the "Modes of Operation" chapter for more details.

7.4.5 BGND Instruction

The BGND instruction is new to the HCS08 compared to the M68HC08. BGND would not be used in normal user programs because it forces the CPU to stop processing user instructions and enter the active background mode. The only way to resume execution of the user program is through reset or by a host debug system issuing a GO, TRACE1, or TAGGO serial command through the background debug interface.

Software-based breakpoints can be set by replacing an opcode at the desired breakpoint address with the BGND opcode. When the program reaches this breakpoint address, the CPU is forced to active background mode rather than continuing the user program.

7.5 HCS08 Instruction Set Summary

Table 7-2 provides a summary of the HCS08 instruction set in all possible addressing modes. The table shows operand construction, execution time in internal bus clock cycles, and cycle-by-cycle details for each addressing mode variation of each instruction.

Table 7-2. Instruction Set Summary (Sheet 1 of 9)

Source Form	Operation	Address Mode	Object Code	Cycles	Cyc-by-Cyc Details	Affect on CCR V 1 1 H	Affect on CCR I N Z C
ADC #*opr8i* ADC *opr8a* ADC *opr16a* ADC *oprx16*,X ADC *oprx8*,X ADC ,X ADC *oprx16*,SP ADC *oprx8*,SP	Add with Carry A ← (A) + (M) + (C)	IMM DIR EXT IX2 IX1 IX SP2 SP1	A9 ii B9 dd C9 hh ll D9 ee ff E9 ff F9 9E D9 ee ff 9E E9 ff	2 3 4 4 3 3 5 4	pp rpp prpp prpp rpp rfp pprpp prpp	þ 1 1 þ	– þ þ þ

ADD #*opr8i*
ADD *opr8a*
ADD *opr16a*
ADD *oprx16*,X
ADD *oprx8*,X
ADD ,X
ADD *oprx16*,SP
ADD *oprx8*,SP
	Add without Carry
	A ← (A) + (M)
		IMM
		DIR
		EXT
		IX2
		IX1
		IX
		SP2
		SP1
			AB ii
			BB dd
			CB hh ll
			DB ee ff
			EB ff
			FB
			9E DB ee ff
			9E EB ff
				2
				3
				4
				4
				3
				3
				5
				4
					pp
					rpp
					prpp
					prpp
					rpp
					rfp
					pprpp
					prpp
						þ 1 1 þ	– þ þ þ

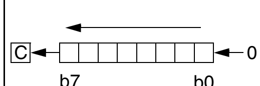
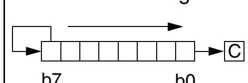
AIS #*opr8i*	Add Immediate Value (Signed) to Stack Pointer SP ← (SP) + (M)	IMM	A7 ii	2	pp	– 1 1 –	– – – –
AIX #*opr8i*	Add Immediate Value (Signed) to Index Register (H:X) H:X ← (H:X) + (M)	IMM	AF ii	2	pp	– 1 1 –	– – – –
AND #*opr8i* AND *opr8a* AND *opr16a* AND *oprx16*,X AND *oprx8*,X AND ,X AND *oprx16*,SP AND *oprx8*,SP	Logical AND A ← (A) & (M)	IMM DIR EXT IX2 IX1 IX SP2 SP1	A4 ii B4 dd C4 hh ll D4 ee ff E4 ff F4 9E D4 ee ff 9E E4 ff	2 3 4 4 3 3 5 4	pp rpp prpp prpp rpp rfp pprpp prpp	0 1 1 –	– þ þ –
ASL *opr8a* ASLA ASLX ASL *oprx8*,X ASL ,X ASL *oprx8*,SP	Arithmetic Shift Left  (Same as LSL)	DIR INH INH IX1 IX SP1	38 dd 48 58 68 ff 78 9E 68 ff	5 1 1 5 4 6	rfwpp p p rfwpp rfwp prfwpp	þ 1 1 –	– þ þ þ
ASR *opr8a* ASRA ASRX ASR *oprx8*,X ASR ,X ASR *oprx8*,SP	Arithmetic Shift Right 	DIR INH INH IX1 IX SP1	37 dd 47 57 67 ff 77 9E 67 ff	5 1 1 5 4 6	rfwpp p p rfwpp rfwp prfwpp	þ 1 1 –	– þ þ þ

Table 7-2. Instruction Set Summary (Sheet 2 of 9)

Source Form	Operation	Address Mode	Object Code	Cycles	Cyc-by-Cyc Details	Affect on CCR	
						V 1 1 H	I N Z C
BCC *rel*	Branch if Carry Bit Clear (if C = 0)	REL	24 rr	3	ppp	– 1 1 –	– – – –
BCLR *n,opr8a*	Clear Bit n in Memory (Mn ← 0)	DIR (b0) DIR (b1) DIR (b2) DIR (b3) DIR (b4) DIR (b5) DIR (b6) DIR (b7)	11 dd 13 dd 15 dd 17 dd 19 dd 1B dd 1D dd 1F dd	5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5	rfwpp rfwpp rfwpp rfwpp rfwpp rfwpp rfwpp rfwpp	– 1 1 –	– – – –
BCS *rel*	Branch if Carry Bit Set (if C = 1) (Same as BLO)	REL	25 rr	3	ppp	– 1 1 –	– – – –
BEQ *rel*	Branch if Equal (if Z = 1)	REL	27 rr	3	ppp	– 1 1 –	– – – –
BGE *rel*	Branch if Greater Than or Equal To (if N ⊕ V = 0) (Signed)	REL	90 rr	3	ppp	– 1 1 –	– – – –
BGND	Enter active background if ENBDM=1 Waits for and processes BDM commands until GO, TRACE1, or TAGGO	INH	82	5+	fp...ppp	– 1 1 –	– – – –
BGT *rel*	Branch if Greater Than (if Z	(N ⊕ V) = 0) (Signed)	REL	92 rr	3	ppp	– 1 1 –	– – – –
BHCC *rel*	Branch if Half Carry Bit Clear (if H = 0)	REL	28 rr	3	ppp	– 1 1 –	– – – –
BHCS *rel*	Branch if Half Carry Bit Set (if H = 1)	REL	29 rr	3	ppp	– 1 1 –	– – – –
BHI *rel*	Branch if Higher (if C | Z = 0)	REL	22 rr	3	ppp	– 1 1 –	– – – –
BHS *rel*	Branch if Higher or Same (if C = 0) (Same as BCC)	REL	24 rr	3	ppp	– 1 1 –	– – – –
BIH *rel*	Branch if IRQ Pin High (if IRQ pin = 1)	REL	2F rr	3	ppp	– 1 1 –	– – – –
BIL *rel*	Branch if IRQ Pin Low (if IRQ pin = 0)	REL	2E rr	3	ppp	– 1 1 –	– – – –
BIT #*opr8i* BIT *opr8a* BIT *opr16a* BIT *oprx16*,X BIT *oprx8*,X BIT ,X BIT *oprx16*,SP BIT *oprx8*,SP	Bit Test (A) & (M) (CCR Updated but Operands Not Changed)	IMM DIR EXT IX2 IX1 IX SP2 SP1	A5 ii B5 dd C5 hh ll D5 ee ff E5 ff F5 9E D5 ee ff 9E E5 ff	2 3 4 4 3 3 5 4	pp rpp prpp prpp rpp rfp pprpp prpp	0 1 1 –	– Þ Þ –
BLE *rel*	Branch if Less Than or Equal To (if Z	(N ⊕ V) = 1) (Signed)	REL	93 rr	3	ppp	– 1 1 –	– – – –
BLO *rel*	Branch if Lower (if C = 1) (Same as BCS)	REL	25 rr	3	ppp	– 1 1 –	– – – –
BLS *rel*	Branch if Lower or Same (if C | Z = 1)	REL	23 rr	3	ppp	– 1 1 –	– – – –
BLT *rel*	Branch if Less Than (if N ⊕ V = 1) (Signed)	REL	91 rr	3	ppp	– 1 1 –	– – – –
BMC *rel*	Branch if Interrupt Mask Clear (if I = 0)	REL	2C rr	3	ppp	– 1 1 –	– – – –
BMI *rel*	Branch if Minus (if N = 1)	REL	2B rr	3	ppp	– 1 1 –	– – – –
BMS *rel*	Branch if Interrupt Mask Set (if I = 1)	REL	2D rr	3	ppp	– 1 1 –	– – – –
BNE *rel*	Branch if Not Equal (if Z = 0)	REL	26 rr	3	ppp	– 1 1 –	– – – –

Table 7-2. Instruction Set Summary (Sheet 3 of 9)

Source Form	Operation	Address Mode	Object Code	Cycles	Cyc-by-Cyc Details	Affect on CCR	
						V 1 1 H	I N Z C
BPL *rel*	Branch if Plus (if N = 0)	REL	2A rr	3	ppp	– 1 1 –	– – – –
BRA *rel*	Branch Always (if I = 1)	REL	20 rr	3	ppp	– 1 1 –	– – – –
BRCLR *n,opr8a,rel*	Branch if Bit *n* in Memory Clear (if (Mn) = 0)	DIR (b0) DIR (b1) DIR (b2) DIR (b3) DIR (b4) DIR (b5) DIR (b6) DIR (b7)	01 dd rr 03 dd rr 05 dd rr 07 dd rr 09 dd rr 0B dd rr 0D dd rr 0F dd rr	5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5	rpppp rpppp rpppp rpppp rpppp rpppp rpppp rpppp	– 1 1 –	– – – Þ
BRN *rel*	Branch Never (if I = 0)	REL	21 rr	3	ppp	– 1 1 –	– – – –
BRSET *n,opr8a,rel*	Branch if Bit *n* in Memory Set (if (Mn) = 1)	DIR (b0) DIR (b1) DIR (b2) DIR (b3) DIR (b4) DIR (b5) DIR (b6) DIR (b7)	00 dd rr 02 dd rr 04 dd rr 06 dd rr 08 dd rr 0A dd rr 0C dd rr 0E dd rr	5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5	rpppp rpppp rpppp rpppp rpppp rpppp rpppp rpppp	– 1 1 –	– – – Þ
BSET *n,opr8a*	Set Bit *n* in Memory (Mn ← 1)	DIR (b0) DIR (b1) DIR (b2) DIR (b3) DIR (b4) DIR (b5) DIR (b6) DIR (b7)	10 dd 12 dd 14 dd 16 dd 18 dd 1A dd 1C dd 1E dd	5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5	rfwpp rfwpp rfwpp rfwpp rfwpp rfwpp rfwpp rfwpp	– 1 1 –	– – – –
BSR *rel*	Branch to Subroutine PC ← (PC) + $0002 push (PCL); SP ← (SP) – $0001 push (PCH); SP ← (SP) – $0001 PC ← (PC) + *rel*	REL	AD rr	5	ssppp	– 1 1 –	– – – –
CBEQ *opr8a,rel* CBEQA *#opr8i,rel* CBEQX *#opr8i,rel* CBEQ *oprx8*,X+,*rel* CBEQ ,X+,*rel* CBEQ *oprx8*,SP,*rel*	Compare and... Branch if (A) = (M) Branch if (A) = (M) Branch if (X) = (M) Branch if (A) = (M) Branch if (A) = (M) Branch if (A) = (M)	DIR IMM IMM IX1+ IX+ SP1	31 dd rr 41 ii rr 51 ii rr 61 ff rr 71 rr 9E 61 ff rr	5 4 4 5 5 6	rpppp pppp pppp rpppp rfppp prpppp	– 1 1 –	– – – –
CLC	Clear Carry Bit (C ← 0)	INH	98	1	p	– 1 1 –	– – – 0
CLI	Clear Interrupt Mask Bit (I ← 0)	INH	9A	1	p	– 1 1 –	0 – – –
CLR *opr8a* CLRA CLRX CLRH CLR *oprx8*,X CLR ,X CLR *oprx8*,SP	Clear M ← $00 A ← $00 X ← $00 H ← $00 M ← $00 M ← $00 M ← $00	DIR INH INH INH IX1 IX SP1	3F dd 4F 5F 8C 6F ff 7F 9E 6F ff	5 1 1 1 5 4 6	rfwpp p p p rfwpp rfwp prfwpp	0 1 1 –	– 0 1 –

Table 7-2. Instruction Set Summary (Sheet 4 of 9)

Source Form	Operation	Address Mode	Object Code	Cycles	Cyc-by-Cyc Details	Affect on CCR V 1 1 H	I N Z C

CMP #*opr8i*
CMP *opr8a*
CMP *opr16a*
CMP *oprx16*,X
CMP *oprx8*,X
CMP ,X
CMP *oprx16*,SP
CMP *oprx8*,SP
	Compare Accumulator with Memory
	A – M
	(CCR Updated But Operands Not Changed)
		IMM
		DIR
		EXT
		IX2
		IX1
		IX
		SP2
		SP1
			A1 ii
			B1 dd
			C1 hh ll
			D1 ee ff
			E1 ff
			F1
			9E D1 ee ff
			9E E1 ff
				2
				3
				4
				4
				3
				3
				5
				4
					pp
					rpp
					prpp
					prpp
					rpp
					rfp
					pprpp
					prpp
						Þ 1 1 –	– Þ Þ Þ

COM *opr8a* COMA COMX COM *oprx8*,X COM ,X COM *oprx8*,SP	Complement M ← (M̄)= $FF – (M) (One's Complement) A ← (Ā) = $FF – (A) X ← (X̄) = $FF – (X) M ← (M̄) = $FF – (M) M ← (M̄) = $FF – (M) M ← (M̄) = $FF – (M)	DIR INH INH IX1 IX SP1	33 dd 43 53 63 ff 73 9E 63 ff	5 1 1 5 4 6	rfwpp p p rfwpp rfwp prfwpp	0 1 1 –	– Þ Þ 1
CPHX *opr16a* CPHX #*opr16i* CPHX *opr8a* CPHX *oprx8*,SP	Compare Index Register (H:X) with Memory (H:X) – (M:M + $0001) (CCR Updated But Operands Not Changed)	EXT IMM DIR SP1	3E hh ll 65 jj kk 75 dd 9E F3 ff	6 3 5 6	prrfpp ppp rrfpp prrfpp	Þ 1 1 –	– Þ Þ Þ
CPX #*opr8i* CPX *opr8a* CPX *opr16a* CPX *oprx16*,X CPX *oprx8*,X CPX ,X CPX *oprx16*,SP CPX *oprx8*,SP	Compare X (Index Register Low) with Memory X – M (CCR Updated But Operands Not Changed)	IMM DIR EXT IX2 IX1 IX SP2 SP1	A3 ii B3 dd C3 hh ll D3 ee ff E3 ff F3 9E D3 ee ff 9E E3 ff	2 3 4 4 3 3 5 4	pp rpp prpp prpp rpp rfp pprpp prpp	Þ 1 1 –	– Þ Þ Þ
DAA	Decimal Adjust Accumulator After ADD or ADC of BCD Values	INH	72	1	p	U 1 1 –	– Þ Þ Þ
DBNZ *opr8a*,*rel* DBNZA *rel* DBNZX *rel* DBNZ *oprx8*,X,*rel* DBNZ ,X,*rel* DBNZ *oprx8*,SP,*rel*	Decrement A, X, or M and Branch if Not Zero (if (result) ≠ 0) DBNZX Affects X Not H	DIR INH INH IX1 IX SP1	3B dd rr 4B rr 5B rr 6B ff rr 7B rr 9E 6B ff rr	7 4 4 7 6 8	rfwpppp fppp fppp rfwpppp rfwppp prfwpppp	– 1 1 –	– – – –
DEC *opr8a* DECA DECX DEC *oprx8*,X DEC ,X DEC *oprx8*,SP	Decrement M ← (M) – $01 A ← (A) – $01 X ← (X) – $01 M ← (M) – $01 M ← (M) – $01 M ← (M) – $01	DIR INH INH IX1 IX SP1	3A dd 4A 5A 6A ff 7A 9E 6A ff	5 1 1 5 4 6	rfwpp p p rfwpp rfwp prfwpp	Þ 1 1 –	– Þ Þ –
DIV	Divide A ← (H:A)÷(X); H ← Remainder	INH	52	6	fffffp	– 1 1 –	– – Þ Þ
EOR #*opr8i* EOR *opr8a* EOR *opr16a* EOR *oprx16*,X EOR *oprx8*,X EOR ,X EOR *oprx16*,SP EOR *oprx8*,SP	Exclusive OR Memory with Accumulator A ← (A ⊕ M)	IMM DIR EXT IX2 IX1 IX SP2 SP1	A8 ii B8 dd C8 hh ll D8 ee ff E8 ff F8 9E D8 ee ff 9E E8 ff	2 3 4 4 3 3 5 4	pp rpp prpp prpp rpp rfp pprpp prpp	0 1 1 –	– Þ Þ –

Table 7-2. Instruction Set Summary (Sheet 5 of 9)

Source Form	Operation	Address Mode	Object Code	Cycles	Cyc-by-Cyc Details	Affect on CCR V 1 1 H	Affect on CCR I N Z C
INC *opr8a* INCA INCX INC *oprx8*,X INC ,X INC *oprx8*,SP	Increment M ← (M) + $01 A ← (A) + $01 X ← (X) + $01 M ← (M) + $01 M ← (M) + $01 M ← (M) + $01	DIR INH INH IX1 IX SP1	3C dd 4C 5C 6C ff 7C 9E 6C ff	5 1 1 5 4 6	rfwpp p p rfwpp rfwp prfwpp	þ 1 1 –	– þ þ –
JMP *opr8a* JMP *opr16a* JMP *oprx16*,X JMP *oprx8*,X JMP ,X	Jump PC ← Jump Address	DIR EXT IX2 IX1 IX	BC dd CC hh ll DC ee ff EC ff FC	3 4 4 3 3	ppp pppp pppp ppp ppp	– 1 1 –	– – – –
JSR *opr8a* JSR *opr16a* JSR *oprx16*,X JSR *oprx8*,X JSR ,X	Jump to Subroutine PC ← (PC) + *n* (*n* = 1, 2, or 3) Push (PCL); SP ← (SP) – $0001 Push (PCH); SP ← (SP) – $0001 PC ← Unconditional Address	DIR EXT IX2 IX1 IX	BD dd CD hh ll DD ee ff ED ff FD	5 6 6 5 5	ssppp pssppp pssppp ssppp ssppp	– 1 1 –	– – – –

LDA #*opr8i*
LDA *opr8a*
LDA *opr16a*
LDA *oprx16*,X
LDA *oprx8*,X
LDA ,X
LDA *oprx16*,SP
LDA *oprx8*,SP
	Load Accumulator from Memory
	A ← (M)
		IMM
		DIR
		EXT
		IX2
		IX1
		IX
		SP2
		SP1
			A6 ii
			B6 dd
			C6 hh ll
			D6 ee ff
			E6 ff
			F6
			9E D6 ee ff
			9E E6 ff
				2
				3
				4
				4
				3
				3
				5
				4
					pp
					rpp
					prpp
					prpp
					rpp
					rfp
					pprpp
					prpp
						0 1 1 –	– þ þ –

LDHX #*opr16i*
LDHX *opr8a*
LDHX *opr16a*
LDHX ,X
LDHX *oprx16*,X
LDHX *oprx8*,X
LDHX *oprx8*,SP
	Load Index Register (H:X)
	H:X ← (M:M + $0001)
		IMM
		DIR
		EXT
		IX
		IX2
		IX1
		SP1
			45 jj kk
			55 dd
			32 hh ll
			9E AE
			9E BE ee ff
			9E CE ff
			9E FE ff
				3
				4
				5
				5
				6
				5
				5
					ppp
					rrpp
					prrpp
					prrfp
					pprrpp
					prrpp
					prrpp
						0 1 1 –	– þ þ –

LDX #*opr8i*
LDX *opr8a*
LDX *opr16a*
LDX *oprx16*,X
LDX *oprx8*,X
LDX ,X
LDX *oprx16*,SP
LDX *oprx8*,SP
	Load X (Index Register Low) from Memory
	X ← (M)
		IMM
		DIR
		EXT
		IX2
		IX1
		IX
		SP2
		SP1
			AE ii
			BE dd
			CE hh ll
			DE ee ff
			EE ff
			FE
			9E DE ee ff
			9E EE ff
				2
				3
				4
				4
				3
				3
				5
				4
					pp
					rpp
					prpp
					prpp
					rpp
					rfp
					pprpp
					prpp
						0 1 1 –	– þ þ –

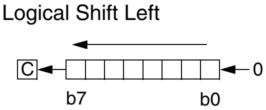
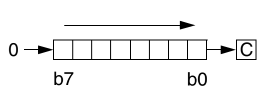
LSL *opr8a* LSLA LSLX LSL *oprx8*,X LSL ,X LSL *oprx8*,SP	Logical Shift Left  (Same as ASL)	DIR INH INH IX1 IX SP1	38 dd 48 58 68 ff 78 9E 68 ff	5 1 1 5 4 6	rfwpp p p rfwpp rfwp prfwpp	þ 1 1 –	– þ þ þ
LSR *opr8a* LSRA LSRX LSR *oprx8*,X LSR ,X LSR *oprx8*,SP	Logical Shift Right 	DIR INH INH IX1 IX SP1	34 dd 44 54 64 ff 74 9E 64 ff	5 1 1 5 4 6	rfwpp p p rfwpp rfwp prfwpp	þ 1 1 –	– 0 þ þ

Table 7-2. Instruction Set Summary (Sheet 6 of 9)

Source Form	Operation	Address Mode	Object Code	Cycles	Cyc-by-Cyc Details	Affect on CCR	
						V 1 1 H	I N Z C

MOV *opr8a,opr8a*
MOV *opr8a*,X+
MOV #*opr8i,opr8a*
MOV ,X+,*opr8a*
	Move
	$(M)_{destination} \leftarrow (M)_{source}$
	In IX+/DIR and DIR/IX+ Modes,
	H:X ← (H:X) + $0001
		DIR/DIR
		DIR/IX+
		IMM/DIR
		IX+/DIR
			4E dd dd
			5E dd
			6E ii dd
			7E dd
				5
				5
				4
				5
					rpwpp
					rfwpp
					pwpp
					rfwpp
						0 1 1 –	– þ þ –

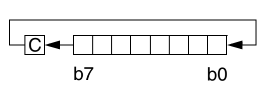
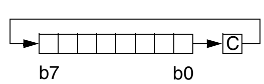
MUL	Unsigned multiply X:A ← (X) × (A)	INH	42	5	ffffp	– 1 1 0	– – – 0
NEG *opr8a* NEGA NEGX NEG *oprx8*,X NEG ,X NEG *oprx8*,SP	Negate M ← – (M) = $00 – (M) (Two's Complement) A ← – (A) = $00 – (A) X ← – (X) = $00 – (X) M ← – (M) = $00 – (M) M ← – (M) = $00 – (M) M ← – (M) = $00 – (M)	DIR INH INH IX1 IX SP1	30 dd 40 50 60 ff 70 9E 60 ff	5 1 1 5 4 6	rfwpp p p rfwpp rfwp prfwpp	þ 1 1 –	– þ þ þ
NOP	No Operation — Uses 1 Bus Cycle	INH	9D	1	p	– 1 1 –	– – – –
NSA	Nibble Swap Accumulator A ← (A[3:0]:A[7:4])	INH	62	1	p	– 1 1 –	– – – –
ORA #*opr8i* ORA *opr8a* ORA *opr16a* ORA *oprx16*,X ORA *oprx8*,X ORA ,X ORA *oprx16*,SP ORA *oprx8*,SP	Inclusive OR Accumulator and Memory A ← (A) | (M)	IMM DIR EXT IX2 IX1 IX SP2 SP1	AA ii BA dd CA hh ll DA ee ff EA ff FA 9E DA ee ff 9E EA ff	2 3 4 4 3 3 5 4	pp rpp prpp prpp rpp rfp pprpp prpp	0 1 1 –	– þ þ –
PSHA	Push Accumulator onto Stack Push (A); SP ← (SP) – $0001	INH	87	2	sp	– 1 1 –	– – – –
PSHH	Push H (Index Register High) onto Stack Push (H); SP ← (SP) – $0001	INH	8B	2	sp	– 1 1 –	– – – –
PSHX	Push X (Index Register Low) onto Stack Push (X); SP ← (SP) – $0001	INH	89	2	sp	– 1 1 –	– – – –
PULA	Pull Accumulator from Stack SP ← (SP + $0001); Pull (A)	INH	86	3	ufp	– 1 1 –	– – – –
PULH	Pull H (Index Register High) from Stack SP ← (SP + $0001); Pull (H)	INH	8A	3	ufp	– 1 1 –	– – – –
PULX	Pull X (Index Register Low) from Stack SP ← (SP + $0001); Pull (X)	INH	88	3	ufp	– 1 1 –	– – – –
ROL *opr8a* ROLA ROLX ROL *oprx8*,X ROL ,X ROL *oprx8*,SP	Rotate Left through Carry  	DIR INH INH IX1 IX SP1	39 dd 49 59 69 ff 79 9E 69 ff	5 1 1 5 4 6	rfwpp p p rfwpp rfwp prfwpp	þ 1 1 –	– þ þ þ
ROR *opr8a* RORA RORX ROR *oprx8*,X ROR ,X ROR *oprx8*,SP	Rotate Right through Carry  	DIR INH INH IX1 IX SP1	36 dd 46 56 66 ff 76 9E 66 ff	5 1 1 5 4 6	rfwpp p p rfwpp rfwp prfwpp	þ 1 1 –	– þ þ þ

Table 7-2. Instruction Set Summary (Sheet 7 of 9)

Source Form	Operation	Address Mode	Object Code	Cycles	Cyc-by-Cyc Details	Affect on CCR V 1 1 H	 I N Z C
RSP	Reset Stack Pointer (Low Byte) SPL ← $FF (High Byte Not Affected)	INH	9C	1	p	– 1 1 –	– – – –
RTI	Return from Interrupt SP ← (SP) + $0001; Pull (CCR) SP ← (SP) + $0001; Pull (A) SP ← (SP) + $0001; Pull (X) SP ← (SP) + $0001; Pull (PCH) SP ← (SP) + $0001; Pull (PCL)	INH	80	9	uuuuufppp	Þ 1 1 Þ	Þ Þ Þ Þ
RTS	Return from Subroutine SP ← SP + $0001; Pull (PCH) SP ← SP + $0001; Pull (PCL)	INH	81	5	ufppp	– 1 1 –	– – – –
SBC #*opr8i* SBC *opr8a* SBC *opr16a* SBC *oprx16*,X SBC *oprx8*,X SBC ,X SBC *oprx16*,SP SBC *oprx8*,SP	Subtract with Carry A ← (A) – (M) – (C)	IMM DIR EXT IX2 IX1 IX SP2 SP1	A2 ii B2 dd C2 hh ll D2 ee ff E2 ff F2 9E D2 ee ff 9E E2 ff	2 3 4 4 3 3 5 4	pp rpp prpp prpp rpp rfp pprpp prpp	Þ 1 1 –	– Þ Þ Þ
SEC	Set Carry Bit (C ← 1)	INH	99	1	p	– 1 1 –	– – – 1
SEI	Set Interrupt Mask Bit (I ← 1)	INH	9B	1	p	– 1 1 –	1 – – –
STA *opr8a* STA *opr16a* STA *oprx16*,X STA *oprx8*,X STA ,X STA *oprx16*,SP STA *oprx8*,SP	Store Accumulator in Memory M ← (A)	DIR EXT IX2 IX1 IX SP2 SP1	B7 dd C7 hh ll D7 ee ff E7 ff F7 9E D7 ee ff 9E E7 ff	3 4 4 3 2 5 4	wpp pwpp pwpp wpp wp ppwpp pwpp	0 1 1 –	– Þ Þ –
STHX *opr8a* STHX *opr16a* STHX *oprx8*,SP	Store H:X (Index Reg.) (M:M + $0001) ← (H:X)	DIR EXT SP1	35 dd 96 hh ll 9E FF ff	4 5 5	wwpp pwwpp pwwpp	0 1 1 –	– Þ Þ –
STOP	Enable Interrupts: Stop Processing Refer to MCU Documentation I bit ← 0; Stop Processing	INH	8E	2	fp...	– 1 1 –	0 – – –
STX *opr8a* STX *opr16a* STX *oprx16*,X STX *oprx8*,X STX ,X STX *oprx16*,SP STX *oprx8*,SP	Store X (Low 8 Bits of Index Register) in Memory M ← (X)	DIR EXT IX2 IX1 IX SP2 SP1	BF dd CF hh ll DF ee ff EF ff FF 9E DF ee ff 9E EF ff	3 4 4 3 2 5 4	wpp pwpp pwpp wpp wp ppwpp pwpp	0 1 1 –	– Þ Þ –

Table 7-2. Instruction Set Summary (Sheet 8 of 9)

Source Form	Operation	Address Mode	Object Code	Cycles	Cyc-by-Cyc Details	Affect on CCR	
						V 1 1 H	I N Z C

SUB #*opr8i*
SUB *opr8a*
SUB *opr16a*
SUB *oprx16*,X
SUB *oprx8*,X
SUB ,X
SUB *oprx16*,SP
SUB *oprx8*,SP
	Subtract
	A ← (A) – (M)
		IMM
		DIR
		EXT
		IX2
		IX1
		IX
		SP2
		SP1
			A0 ii
			B0 dd
			C0 hh ll
			D0 ee ff
			E0 ff
			F0
			9E D0 ee ff
			9E E0 ff
				2
				3
				4
				4
				3
				3
				5
				4
					pp
					rpp
					prpp
					prpp
					rpp
					rfp
					pprpp
					prpp
						Þ 1 1 –	– Þ Þ Þ

SWI	Software Interrupt PC ← (PC) + $0001 Push (PCL); SP ← (SP) – $0001 Push (PCH); SP ← (SP) – $0001 Push (X); SP ← (SP) – $0001 Push (A); SP ← (SP) – $0001 Push (CCR); SP ← (SP) – $0001 I ← 1; PCH ← Interrupt Vector High Byte PCL ← Interrupt Vector Low Byte	INH	83	11	sssssvvfppp	– 1 1 –	1 – – –
TAP	Transfer Accumulator to CCR CCR ← (A)	INH	84	1	p	Þ 1 1 Þ	Þ Þ Þ Þ
TAX	Transfer Accumulator to X (Index Register Low) X ← (A)	INH	97	1	p	– 1 1 –	– – – –
TPA	Transfer CCR to Accumulator A ← (CCR)	INH	85	1	p	– 1 1 –	– – – –
TST *opr8a* TSTA TSTX TST *oprx8*,X TST ,X TST *oprx8*,SP	Test for Negative or Zero (M) – $00 (A) – $00 (X) – $00 (M) – $00 (M) – $00 (M) – $00	DIR INH INH IX1 IX SP1	3D dd 4D 5D 6D ff 7D 9E 6D ff	4 1 1 4 3 5	rfpp p p rfpp rfp prfpp	0 1 1 –	– Þ Þ –
TSX	Transfer SP to Index Reg. H:X ← (SP) + $0001	INH	95	2	fp	– 1 1 –	– – – –
TXA	Transfer X (Index Reg. Low) to Accumulator A ← (X)	INH	9F	1	p	– 1 1 –	– – – –

Table 7-2. Instruction Set Summary (Sheet 9 of 9)

Source Form	Operation	Address Mode	Object Code	Cycles	Cyc-by-Cyc Details	Affect on CCR	
						V 1 1 H	I N Z C
TXS	Transfer Index Reg. to SP SP ← (H:X) – $0001	INH	94	2	fp	– 1 1 –	– – – –
WAIT	Enable Interrupts; Wait for Interrupt I bit ← 0; Halt CPU	INH	8F	2+	fp...	– 1 1 –	0 – – –

Source Form: Everything in the source forms columns, *except expressions in italic characters*, is literal information which must appear in the assembly source file exactly as shown. The initial 3- to 5-letter mnemonic and the characters (# , ( ) and +) are always a literal characters.

n Any label or expression that evaluates to a single integer in the range 0-7.
opr8i Any label or expression that evaluates to an 8-bit immediate value.
opr16i Any label or expression that evaluates to a 16-bit immediate value.
opr8a Any label or expression that evaluates to an 8-bit direct-page address ($00xx).
opr16a Any label or expression that evaluates to a 16-bit address.
oprx8 Any label or expression that evaluates to an unsigned 8-bit value, used for indexed addressing.
oprx16 Any label or expression that evaluates to a 16-bit value, used for indexed addressing.
rel Any label or expression that refers to an address that is within –128 to +127 locations from the start of the next instruction.

Operation Symbols:

A Accumulator
CCR Condition code register
H Index register high byte
M Memory location
n Any bit
opr Operand (one or two bytes)
PC Program counter
PCH Program counter high byte
PCL Program counter low byte
rel Relative program counter offset byte
SP Stack pointer
SPL Stack pointer low byte
X Index register low byte
& Logical AND
| Logical OR
⊕ Logical EXCLUSIVE OR
( ) Contents of
+ Add
– Subtract, Negation (two's complement)
× Multiply
÷ Divide
Immediate value
← Loaded with
: Concatenated with

CCR Bits:

V Overflow bit
H Half-carry bit
I Interrupt mask
N Negative bit
Z Zero bit
C Carry/borrow bit

Addressing Modes:

DIR Direct addressing mode
EXT Extended addressing mode
IMM Immediate addressing mode
INH Inherent addressing mode
IX Indexed, no offset addressing mode
IX1 Indexed, 8-bit offset addressing mode
IX2 Indexed, 16-bit offset addressing mode
IX+ Indexed, no offset, post increment addressing mode
IX1+ Indexed, 8-bit offset, post increment addressing mode
REL Relative addressing mode
SP1 Stack pointer, 8-bit offset addressing mode
SP2 Stack pointer 16-bit offset addressing mode

Cycle-by-Cycle Codes:

f Free cycle. This indicates a cycle where the CPU does not require use of the system buses. An f cycle is always one cycle of the system bus clock and is always a read cycle.
p Program fetch; read from next consecutive location in program memory
r Read 8-bit operand
s Push (write) one byte onto stack
u Pop (read) one byte from stack
v Read vector from $FFxx (high byte first)
w Write 8-bit operand

CCR Effects:

Þ Set or cleared
– Not affected
U Undefined

Table 7-3. Opcode Map (Sheet 1 of 2)

Bit-Manipulation		Branch	Read-Modify-Write					Control		Register/Memory					
00 5 BRSET0 3 DIR	10 5 BSET0 2 DIR	20 3 BRA 2 REL	30 5 NEG 2 DIR	40 1 NEGA 1 INH	50 1 NEGX 1 INH	60 5 NEG 2 IX1	70 4 NEG 1 IX	80 9 RTI 1 INH	90 3 BGE 2 REL	A0 2 SUB 2 IMM	B0 3 SUB 2 DIR	C0 4 SUB 3 EXT	D0 4 SUB 3 IX2	E0 3 SUB 2 IX1	F0 3 SUB 1 IX
01 5 BRCLR0 3 DIR	11 5 BCLR0 2 DIR	21 3 BRN 2 REL	31 5 CBEQ 3 DIR	41 4 CBEQA 3 IMM	51 4 CBEQX 3 IMM	61 5 CBEQ 3 IX1+	71 5 CBEQ 2 IX+	81 6 RTS 1 INH	91 3 BLT 2 REL	A1 2 CMP 2 IMM	B1 3 CMP 2 DIR	C1 4 CMP 3 EXT	D1 4 CMP 3 IX2	E1 3 CMP 2 IX1	F1 3 CMP 1 IX
02 5 BRSET1 3 DIR	12 5 BSET1 2 DIR	22 3 BHI 2 REL	32 5 LDHX 3 EXT	42 5 MUL 1 INH	52 6 DIV 1 INH	62 1 NSA 1 INH	72 1 DAA 1 INH	82 5+ BGND 1 INH	92 3 BGT 2 REL	A2 2 SBC 2 IMM	B2 3 SBC 2 DIR	C2 4 SBC 3 EXT	D2 4 SBC 3 IX2	E2 3 SBC 2 IX1	F2 3 SBC 1 IX
03 5 BRCLR1 3 DIR	13 5 BCLR1 2 DIR	23 3 BLS 2 REL	33 5 COM 2 DIR	43 1 COMA 1 INH	53 1 COMX 1 INH	63 5 COM 2 IX1	73 4 COM 1 IX	83 11 SWI 1 INH	93 3 BLE 2 REL	A3 2 CPX 2 IMM	B3 3 CPX 2 DIR	C3 4 CPX 3 EXT	D3 4 CPX 3 IX2	E3 3 CPX 2 IX1	F3 3 CPX 1 IX
04 5 BRSET2 3 DIR	14 5 BSET2 2 DIR	24 3 BCC 2 REL	34 5 LSR 2 DIR	44 1 LSRA 1 INH	54 1 LSRX 1 INH	64 5 LSR 2 IX1	74 4 LSR 1 IX	84 1 TAP 1 INH	94 2 TXS 1 INH	A4 2 AND 2 IMM	B4 3 AND 2 DIR	C4 4 AND 3 EXT	D4 4 AND 3 IX2	E4 3 AND 2 IX1	F4 3 AND 1 IX
05 5 BRCLR2 3 DIR	15 5 BCLR2 2 DIR	25 3 BCS 2 REL	35 4 STHX 2 DIR	45 3 LDHX 3 IMM	55 4 LDHX 2 DIR	65 3 CPHX 3 IMM	75 5 CPHX 2 DIR	85 1 TPA 1 INH	95 2 TSX 1 INH	A5 2 BIT 2 IMM	B5 3 BIT 2 DIR	C5 4 BIT 3 EXT	D5 4 BIT 3 IX2	E5 3 BIT 2 IX1	F5 3 BIT 1 IX
06 5 BRSET3 3 DIR	16 5 BSET3 2 DIR	26 3 BNE 2 REL	36 5 ROR 2 DIR	46 1 RORA 1 INH	56 1 RORX 1 INH	66 5 ROR 2 IX1	76 4 ROR 1 IX	86 3 PULA 1 INH	96 5 STHX 3 EXT	A6 2 LDA 2 IMM	B6 3 LDA 2 DIR	C6 4 LDA 3 EXT	D6 4 LDA 3 IX2	E6 3 LDA 2 IX1	F6 3 LDA 1 IX
07 5 BRCLR3 3 DIR	17 5 BCLR3 2 DIR	27 3 BEQ 2 REL	37 5 ASR 2 DIR	47 1 ASRA 1 INH	57 1 ASRX 1 INH	67 5 ASR 2 IX1	77 4 ASR 1 IX	87 2 PSHA 1 INH	97 1 TAX 1 INH	A7 2 AIS 2 IMM	B7 3 STA 2 DIR	C7 4 STA 3 EXT	D7 4 STA 3 IX2	E7 3 STA 2 IX1	F7 2 STA 1 IX
08 5 BRSET4 3 DIR	18 5 BSET4 2 DIR	28 3 BHCC 2 REL	38 5 LSL 2 DIR	48 1 LSLA 1 INH	58 1 LSLX 1 INH	68 5 LSL 2 IX1	78 4 LSL 1 IX	88 3 PULX 1 INH	98 1 CLC 1 INH	A8 2 EOR 2 IMM	B8 3 EOR 2 DIR	C8 4 EOR 3 EXT	D8 4 EOR 3 IX2	E8 3 EOR 2 IX1	F8 3 EOR 1 IX
09 5 BRCLR4 3 DIR	19 5 BCLR4 2 DIR	29 3 BHCS 2 REL	39 5 ROL 2 DIR	49 1 ROLA 1 INH	59 1 ROLX 1 INH	69 5 ROL 2 IX1	79 4 ROL 1 IX	89 2 PSHX 1 INH	99 1 SEC 1 INH	A9 2 ADC 2 IMM	B9 3 ADC 2 DIR	C9 4 ADC 3 EXT	D9 4 ADC 3 IX2	E9 3 ADC 2 IX1	F9 3 ADC 1 IX
0A 5 BRSET5 3 DIR	1A 5 BSET5 2 DIR	2A 3 BPL 2 REL	3A 5 DEC 2 DIR	4A 1 DECA 1 INH	5A 1 DECX 1 INH	6A 5 DEC 2 IX1	7A 4 DEC 1 IX	8A 3 PULH 1 INH	9A 1 CLI 1 INH	AA 2 ORA 2 IMM	BA 3 ORA 2 DIR	CA 4 ORA 3 EXT	DA 4 ORA 3 IX2	EA 3 ORA 2 IX1	FA 3 ORA 1 IX
0B 5 BRCLR5 3 DIR	1B 5 BCLR5 2 DIR	2B 3 BMI 2 REL	3B 7 DBNZ 3 DIR	4B 4 DBNZA 2 INH	5B 4 DBNZX 2 INH	6B 7 DBNZ 3 IX1	7B 6 DBNZ 2 IX	8B 2 PSHH 1 INH	9B 1 SEI 1 INH	AB 2 ADD 2 IMM	BB 3 ADD 2 DIR	CB 4 ADD 3 EXT	DB 4 ADD 3 IX2	EB 3 ADD 2 IX1	FB 3 ADD 1 IX
0C 5 BRSET6 3 DIR	1C 5 BSET6 2 DIR	2C 3 BMC 2 REL	3C 5 INC 2 DIR	4C 1 INCA 1 INH	5C 1 INCX 1 INH	6C 5 INC 2 IX1	7C 4 INC 1 IX	8C 1 CLRH 1 INH	9C 1 RSP 1 INH		BC 3 JMP 2 DIR	CC 4 JMP 3 EXT	DC 4 JMP 3 IX2	EC 3 JMP 2 IX1	FC 3 JMP 1 IX
0D 5 BRCLR6 3 DIR	1D 5 BCLR6 2 DIR	2D 3 BMS 2 REL	3D 4 TST 2 DIR	4D 1 TSTA 1 INH	5D 1 TSTX 1 INH	6D 4 TST 2 IX1	7D 3 TST 1 IX		9D 1 NOP 1 INH	AD 5 BSR 2 REL	BD 5 JSR 2 DIR	CD 6 JSR 3 EXT	DD 6 JSR 3 IX2	ED 5 JSR 2 IX1	FD 5 JSR 1 IX
0E 5 BRSET7 3 DIR	1E 5 BSET7 2 DIR	2E 3 BIL 2 REL	3E 6 CPHX 3 EXT	4E 5 MOV 3 DD	5E 5 MOV 2 DIX+	6E 4 MOV 3 IMD	7E 5 MOV 2 IX+D	8E 2+ STOP 1 INH	9E Page 2	AE 2 LDX 2 IMM	BE 3 LDX 2 DIR	CE 4 LDX 3 EXT	DE 4 LDX 3 IX2	EE 3 LDX 2 IX1	FE 3 LDX 1 IX
0F 5 BRCLR7 3 DIR	1F 5 BCLR7 2 DIR	2F 3 BIH 2 REL	3F 5 CLR 2 DIR	4F 1 CLRA 1 INH	5F 1 CLRX 1 INH	6F 5 CLR 2 IX1	7F 4 CLR 1 IX	8F 2+ WAIT 1 INH	9F 1 TXA 1 INH	AF 2 AIX 2 IMM	BF 3 STX 2 DIR	CF 4 STX 3 EXT	DF 4 STX 3 IX2	EF 3 STX 2 IX1	FF 2 STX 1 IX

INH	**Inherent**	**REL**	**Relative**	**SP1**	**Stack Pointer, 8-Bit Offset**
IMM	**Immediate**	**IX**	**Indexed, No Offset**	**SP2**	**Stack Pointer, 16-Bit Offset**
DIR	**Direct**	**IX1**	**Indexed, 8-Bit Offset**	**IX+**	**Indexed, No Offset with Post Increment**
EXT	**Extended**	**IX2**	**Indexed, 16-Bit Offset**		
DD	**DIR to DIR**	**IMD**	**IMM to DIR**	**IX1+**	**Indexed, 1-Byte Offset with Post Increment**
IX+D	**IX+ to DIR**	**DIX+**	**DIR to IX+**		

Opcode in Hexadecimal	F0 3	**HCS08 Cycles**
	SUB	**Instruction Mnemonic**
Number of Bytes	1 IX	**Addressing Mode**

Table 7-3. Opcode Map (Sheet 2 of 2)

Bit-Manipulation		Branch	Read-Modify-Write					Control		Register/Memory					
						9E60 6 NEG 3 SP1							9ED0 5 SUB 4 SP2	9EE0 4 SUB 3 SP1	
						9E61 6 CBEQ 4 SP1							9ED1 5 CMP 4 SP2	9EE1 4 CMP 3 SP1	
													9ED2 5 SBC 4 SP2	9EE2 4 SBC 3 SP1	
						9E63 6 COM 3 SP1							9ED3 5 CPX 4 SP2	9EE3 4 CPX 3 SP1	9EF3 6 CPHX 3 SP1
						9E64 6 LSR 3 SP1							9ED4 5 AND 4 SP2	9EE4 4 AND 3 SP1	
													9ED5 5 BIT 4 SP2	9EE5 4 BIT 3 SP1	
						9E66 6 ROR 3 SP1							9ED6 5 LDA 4 SP2	9EE6 4 LDA 3 SP1	
						9E67 6 ASR 3 SP1							9ED7 5 STA 4 SP2	9EE7 4 STA 3 SP1	
						9E68 6 LSL 3 SP1							9ED8 5 EOR 4 SP2	9EE8 4 EOR 3 SP1	
						9E69 6 ROL 3 SP1							9ED9 5 ADC 4 SP2	9EE9 4 ADC 3 SP1	
						9E6A 6 DEC 3 SP1							9EDA 5 ORA 4 SP2	9EEA 4 ORA 3 SP1	
						9E6B 8 DBNZ 4 SP1							9EDB 5 ADD 4 SP2	9EEB 4 ADD 3 SP1	
						9E6C 6 INC 3 SP1									
						9E6D 5 TST 3 SP1									
										9EAE 5 LDHX 2 IX	9EBE 6 LDHX 4 IX2	9ECE 5 LDHX 3 IX1	9EDE 5 LDX 4 SP2	9EEE 4 LDX 3 SP1	9EFE 5 LDHX 3 SP1
						9E6F 6 CLR 3 SP1							9EDF 5 STX 4 SP2	9EEF 4 STX 3 SP1	9EFF 5 STHX 3 SP1

INH	Inherent	REL	Relative	SP1	Stack Pointer, 8-Bit Offset
IMM	Immediate	IX	Indexed, No Offset	SP2	Stack Pointer, 16-Bit Offset
DIR	Direct	IX1	Indexed, 8-Bit Offset	IX+	Indexed, No Offset with Post Increment
EXT	Extended	IX2	Indexed, 16-Bit Offset		
DD	DIR to DIR	IMD	IMM to DIR	IX1+	Indexed, 1-Byte Offset with Post Increment
IX+D	IX+ to DIR	DIX+	DIR to IX+		

Note: All Sheet 2 Opcodes are Preceded by the Page 2 Prebyte (9E)

Prebyte (9E) and Opcode in Hexadecimal	9E60 6	HCS08 Cycles
	NEG	Instruction Mnemonic
Number of Bytes	3 SP1	Addressing Mode

Chapter 8
Analog-to-Digital Converter (S08ADCV1)

8.1 Introduction

The 10-bit analog-to-digital converter (ADC) is a successive approximation ADC designed for operation within an integrated microcontroller system-on-chip.

NOTE

- The APCTL3 is reserved for the MC9S08SC4 device. Please disregard any reference to APCTL3 in this chapter.
- The ADC hardware trigger is not enabled in the MC9S08SC4 device. Please disregard any reference to ADC hardware trigger in this chapter.

The ADC channel assignments, alternate clock function, and temperature sensor function are configured as described below for the MC9S08SC4 device.

8.1.1 Channel Assignments

The ADC channel assignments for the MC9S08SC4 devices are shown in Table 8-1. Reserved channels convert to an unknown value.

NOTE

This chapter shows bits for all S08ADC10V1 channels. The MC9S08SC4 does not use all of these channels. All bits corresponding to channels that are not available on a device are reserved.

Table 8-1. ADC Channel Assignment

ADCH	Channel	Input	ADCH	Channel	Input
00000	AD0	PTA0/ADP0	10000	AD16	V_{SS}
00001	AD1	PTA1/ADP1	10001	AD17	V_{SS}
00010	AD2	PTA2/ADP2	10010	AD18	V_{SS}
00011	AD3	PTA3/ADP3	10011	AD19	V_{SS}
00100	AD4	PTB0/ADP4	10100	AD20	Reserved
00101	AD5	PTB1/ADP5	10101	AD21	Reserved
00110	AD6	PTB2/ADP6	10110	AD22	Reserved
00111	AD7	PTB3/ADP7	10111	AD23	Reserved
01000	AD8	V_{SS}	11000	AD24	Reserved
01001	AD9	V_{SS}	11001	AD25	Reserved
01010	AD10	V_{SS}	11010	AD26	Temperature Sensor[1]
01011	AD11	V_{SS}	11011	AD27	Internal Bandgap[2]
01100	AD12	V_{SS}	11100	-	Reserved
01101	AD13	V_{SS}	11101	V_{REFH}	V_{DD}
01110	AD14	V_{SS}	11110	V_{REFL}	V_{SS}
01111	AD15	V_{SS}	11111	Module Disabled	None

1 For information, see Section 8.1.3, "Temperature Sensor."

2 Requires BGBE =1 in SPMSC1 see Section 5.7.7, "System Power Management Status and Control 2 Register (SPMSC2)." For value of bandgap voltage reference refer to MC9S08SC4 datasheet."

8.1.2 Alternate Clock

The ADC module is capable of performing conversions using the MCU bus clock, the bus clock divided by two, the local asynchronous clock (ADACK) within the module, or the alternate clock, ALTCLK. The alternate clock for the MC9S08SC4 MCU devices is the external reference clock (ICSERCLK).

The selected clock source must run at a frequency such that the ADC conversion clock (ADCK) runs at a frequency within its specified range (f_{ADCK}) after being divided down as determined by the ADIV bits.

ALTCLK is active while the MCU is in wait mode provided the conditions described above are met. This allows ALTCLK to be used as the conversion clock source for the ADC while the MCU is in wait mode.

ALTCLK cannot be used as the ADC conversion clock source while the MCU is in stop3.

8.1.2.1 Configuration for Stop Modes

The ADC, if enabled, must be configured to use the asynchronous clock source, ADACK, to meet the ADC minimum frequency requirements. The voltage regulator must also be enabled in stop mode by setting the LVDE and LVDSE bits in the SPMSC1 register.

8.1.3 Temperature Sensor

The ADC module includes a temperature sensor whose output is connected to AD26.

To use the on-chip temperature sensor, the user must perform the following:

- Configure ADC for long sample with a maximum of 1 MHz clock
- Convert the bandgap voltage reference channel (AD27)
  - — By converting the digital value of the bandgap voltage reference channel using the value of V_{BG} the user can determine V_{DD}. For value of bandgap voltage, see MC9S08SC4 datasheet.
- Convert the temperature sensor channel (AD26)
  - — By using the calculated value of V_{DD}, convert the digital value of AD26 into a voltage, V_{TEMP}.

Equation 8-1 provides an approximate transfer function of the temperature sensor.

$$\textbf{Temp = 25 - ((}V_{TEMP}\textbf{ -}V_{TEMP25}\textbf{)} \div \textbf{m)} \qquad \textit{Eqn. 8-1}$$

where:

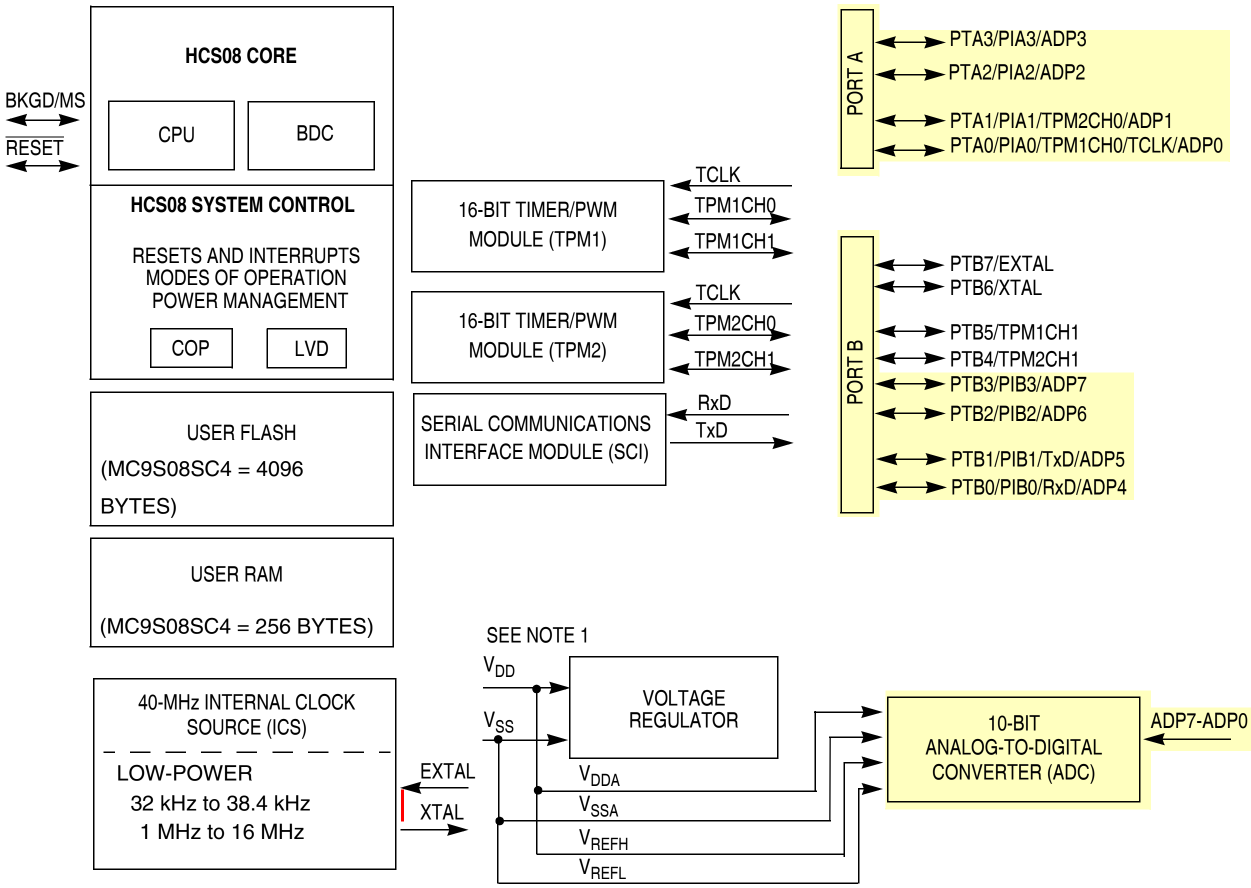
- — V_{TEMP} is the voltage of the temperature sensor channel at the ambient temperature.
- — V_{TEMP25} is the voltage of the temperature sensor channel at 25°C.
- — m is the hot or cold voltage versus temperature slope in V/°C.

For temperature calculations, use the V_{TEMP25} and m values from the ADC electricals table in MC9S08SC4 datasheet.

In application code, the user reads the temperature sensor channel, calculates V_{TEMP}, and compares to V_{TEMP25}. If V_{TEMP} is greater than V_{TEMP25} the cold slope value is applied in Equation 8-1. If V_{TEMP} is less than V_{TEMP25} the hot slope value is applied in Equation 8-1.

For more information on using the temperature sensor, refer AN3031.

Figure 8-1 shows the MC9S08SC4 block diagram with the ADC module highlighted.



NOTES

1: V_{DDA}/V_{REFH} and V_{SSA}/V_{REFL}, are derived from V_{DD} and V_{SS} respectively.

Figure 8-1. MC9S08SC4 Block Diagram with ADC Highlighted

8.1.4 Features

Features of the ADC module include:

- Linear successive approximation algorithm with 10-bit resolution
- Up to 28 analog inputs[1]
- Output formatted in 10- or 8-bit right-justified unsigned format
- Single or continuous conversion (automatic return to idle after single conversion)
- Configurable sample time and conversion speed/power
- Conversion complete flag and interrupt
- Input clock selectable from up to four sources
- Operation in wait or stop3 modes for lower noise operation
- Asynchronous clock source for lower noise operation
- Selectable asynchronous hardware conversion trigger
- Automatic compare with interrupt for less-than, or greater-than or equal-to, programmable value

8.1.5 ADC Module Block Diagram

Figure 8-2 provides a block diagram of the ADC module.

1. Number of analog inputs varies according to the device and may be from external or internal sources. Refer to the introduction section to this chapter for AD0–AD27 channel input assignments.

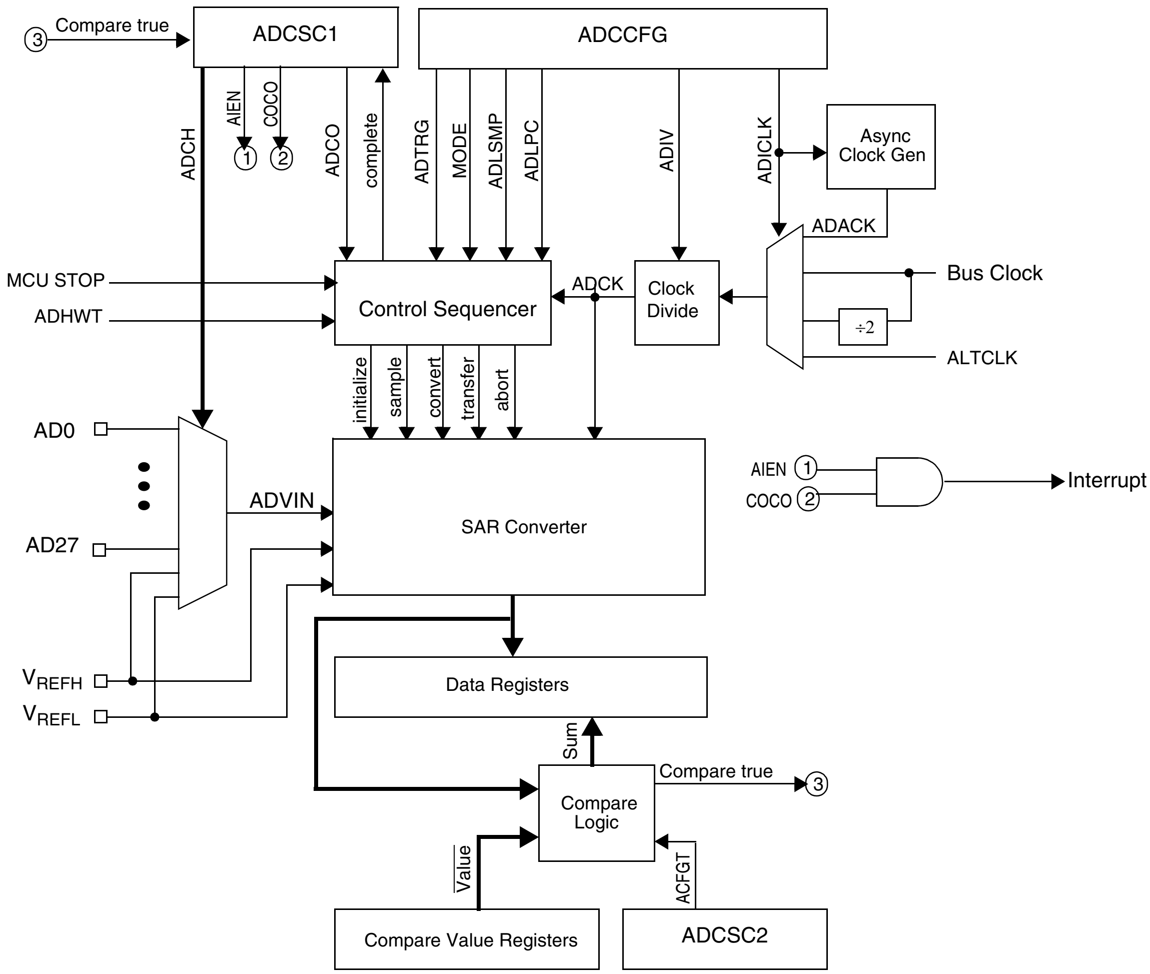


Figure 8-2. ADC Block Diagram

8.2 External Signal Description

The ADC module supports up to 28 separate analog inputs. It also requires four supply/reference/ground connections.

Table 8-2. Signal Properties

Name	Function
AD27–AD0	Analog Channel inputs
V_{REFH}	High reference voltage
V_{REFL}	Low reference voltage
V_{DDA}	Analog power supply
V_{SSA}	Analog ground

8.2.1 Analog Power (V_{DDA})

The ADC analog portion uses V_{DDA} as its power connection. In some packages, V_{DDA} is connected internally to V_{DD}. If externally available, connect the V_{DDA} pin to the same voltage potential as V_{DD}. External filtering may be necessary to ensure clean V_{DDA} for good results.

8.2.2 Analog Ground (V_{SSA})

The ADC analog portion uses V_{SSA} as its ground connection. In some packages, V_{SSA} is connected internally to V_{SS}. If externally available, connect the V_{SSA} pin to the same voltage potential as V_{SS}.

8.2.3 Voltage Reference High (V_{REFH})

V_{REFH} is the high reference voltage for the converter. In some packages, V_{REFH} is connected internally to V_{DDA}. If externally available, V_{REFH} may be connected to the same potential as V_{DDA} or may be driven by an external source between the minimum V_{DDA} spec and the V_{DDA} potential (V_{REFH} must never exceed V_{DDA}).

8.2.4 Voltage Reference Low (V_{REFL})

V_{REFL} is the low-reference voltage for the converter. In some packages, V_{REFL} is connected internally to V_{SSA}. If externally available, connect the V_{REFL} pin to the same voltage potential as V_{SSA}.

8.2.5 Analog Channel Inputs (ADx)

The ADC module supports up to 28 separate analog inputs. An input is selected for conversion through the ADCH channel select bits.

8.3 Register Definition

These memory-mapped registers control and monitor operation of the ADC:

- Status and control register, ADCSC1
- Status and control register, ADCSC2
- Data result registers, ADCRH and ADCRL
- Compare value registers, ADCCVH and ADCCVL
- Configuration register, ADCCFG
- Pin control registers, APCTLx[1]

1. Number of APCTLx registers depends on the number of external analog inputs available on the device. Please refer to the introduction of this module for external analog input assignments.

8.3.1 Status and Control Register 1 (ADCSC1)

This section describes the function of the ADC status and control register (ADCSC1). Writing ADCSC1 aborts the current conversion and initiates a new conversion (if the ADCH bits are equal to a value other than all 1s).

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	COCO	AIEN	ADCO	ADCH				
W								
Reset:	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1

= Unimplemented or Reserved

Figure 8-3. Status and Control Register (ADCSC1)

Table 8-3. ADCSC1 Register Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7 COCO	**Conversion Complete Flag** — The COCO flag is a read-only bit set each time a conversion is completed when the compare function is disabled (ACFE = 0). When the compare function is enabled (ACFE = 1), the COCO flag is set upon completion of a conversion only if the compare result is true. This bit is cleared when ADCSC1 is written or whenever ADCRL is read. 0 Conversion not completed 1 Conversion completed
6 AIEN	**Interrupt Enable** — AIEN enables conversion complete interrupts. When COCO becomes set while AIEN is high, an interrupt is asserted. 0 Conversion complete interrupt disabled 1 Conversion complete interrupt enabled
5 ADCO	**Continuous Conversion Enable** — ADCO enables continuous conversions. 0 One conversion following a write to the ADCSC1 when software triggered operation is selected, or one conversion following assertion of ADHWT when hardware triggered operation is selected. 1 Continuous conversions initiated following a write to ADCSC1 when software triggered operation is selected. Continuous conversions are initiated by an ADHWT event when hardware triggered operation is selected.
4:0 ADCH	**Input Channel Select** — The ADCH bits form a 5-bit field which that selects one of the input channels. The input channels are detailed in Table 8-4. The successive approximation converter subsystem is turned off when the channel select bits are all set. This feature allows for explicit disabling of the ADC and isolation of the input channel from all sources. Terminating continuous conversions this way prevents an additional, single conversion from being performed. It is not necessary to set the channel select bits to all ones to place the ADC in a low-power state when continuous conversions are not enabled because the module automatically enters a low-power state when a conversion completes.

Table 8-4. Input Channel Select

ADCH	Input Select	ADCH	Input Select
00000	AD0	10000	AD16
00001	AD1	10001	AD17
00010	AD2	10010	AD18
00011	AD3	10011	AD19

Table 8-4. Input Channel Select (continued)

ADCH	Input Select	ADCH	Input Select
00100	AD4	10100	AD20
00101	AD5	10101	AD21
00110	AD6	10110	AD22
00111	AD7	10111	AD23
01000	AD8	11000	AD24
01001	AD9	11001	AD25
01010	AD10	11010	AD26
01011	AD11	11011	AD27
01100	AD12	11100	Reserved
01101	AD13	11101	V_{REFH}
01110	AD14	11110	V_{REFL}
01111	AD15	11111	Module disabled

8.3.2 Status and Control Register 2 (ADCSC2)

The ADCSC2 register controls the compare function, conversion trigger, and conversion active of the ADC module.

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	ADACT	ADTRG	ACFE	ACFGT	0	0	R[1]	R[1]
W								
Reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

= Unimplemented or Reserved

1 Bits 1 and 0 are reserved bits that must always be written to 0.

Figure 8-4. Status and Control Register 2 (ADCSC2)

Table 8-5. ADCSC2 Register Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7 ADACT	**Conversion Active** — Indicates that a conversion is in progress. ADACT is set when a conversion is initiated and cleared when a conversion is completed or aborted. 0 Conversion not in progress 1 Conversion in progress
6 ADTRG	**Conversion Trigger Select** — Selects the type of trigger used for initiating a conversion. Two types of triggers are selectable: software trigger and hardware trigger. When software trigger is selected, a conversion is initiated following a write to ADCSC1. When hardware trigger is selected, a conversion is initiated following the assertion of the ADHWT input. 0 Software trigger selected 1 Hardware trigger selected

Table 8-5. ADCSC2 Register Field Descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
5 ACFE	**Compare Function Enable** — Enables the compare function. 0 Compare function disabled 1 Compare function enabled
4 ACFGT	**Compare Function Greater Than Enable** — Configures the compare function to trigger when the result of the conversion of the input being monitored is greater than or equal to the compare level. The compare function defaults to triggering when the result of the compare of the input being monitored is less than the compare level. 0 Compare triggers when input is less than compare level 1 Compare triggers when input is greater than or equal to compare level

8.3.3 Data Result High Register (ADCRH)

In 10-bit operation, ADCRH contains the upper two bits of 10-bit conversion data. In 10-bit mode, ADCRH is updated each time a conversion completes except when automatic compare is enabled and the compare condition is not met. When configured for 8-bit mode, ADR[9:8] are cleared.

When automatic compare is not enabled, the value stored in ADCRH are the upper bits of the conversion result. When automatic compare is enabled, the conversion result is manipulated as described in Section 8.4.5, "Automatic Compare Function" prior to storage in ADCRH:ADCRL registers.

In 10-bit mode, reading ADCRH prevents the ADC from transferring subsequent conversion data into the result registers until ADCRL is read. If ADCRL is not read until after the next conversion is completed, the intermediate conversion data is lost. In 8-bit mode, there is no interlocking with ADCRL. If the MODE bits are changed, any data in ADCRH becomes invalid.

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0	0	0	0	0	0	ADR9	ADR8
W								
Reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

= Unimplemented or Reserved

Figure 8-5. Data Result High Register (ADCRH)

8.3.4 Data Result Low Register (ADCRL)

ADCRL contains the lower eight bits of a 10-bit conversion data, and all eight bits of 8-bit conversion data. ADCRL is updated each time a conversion completes except when automatic compare is enabled and the compare condition is not met.

When automatic compare is not enabled, the value stored in ADCRL is the lower eight bits of the conversion result. When automatic compare is enabled, the conversion result is manipulated as described in Section 8.4.5, "Automatic Compare Function" prior to storage in ADCRH:ADCRL registers.

In 10-bit mode, reading ADCRH prevents the ADC from transferring subsequent conversion data into the result registers until ADCRL is read. If ADCRL is not read until the after next conversion is completed, the intermediate conversion data is lost. In 8-bit mode, there is no interlocking with ADCRH. If the MODE bits are changed, any data in ADCRL becomes invalid.

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	ADR7	ADR6	ADR5	ADR4	ADR3	ADR2	ADR1	ADR0
W								
Reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

= Unimplemented or Reserved

Figure 8-6. Data Result Low Register (ADCRL)

8.3.5 Compare Value High Register (ADCCVH)

In 10-bit mode, the ADCCVH register holds the upper two bits of the 10-bit compare value (ADCV[9:8]). When the compare function is enabled, these bits are compared to the upper two bits of the result following a conversion in 10-bit mode.

In 8-bit operation, ADCCVH is not used during compare.

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0	0	0	0			ADCV9	ADCV8
W								
Reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

= Unimplemented or Reserved

Figure 8-7. Compare Value High Register (ADCCVH)

8.3.6 Compare Value Low Register (ADCCVL)

The ADCCVL register holds the lower eight bits of the 10-bit compare value or all eight bits of the 8-bit compare value. When the compare function is enabled, bits ADCV[7:0] are compared to the lower eight bits of the result following a conversion in 10-bit or 8-bit mode.

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	ADCV7	ADCV6	ADCV5	ADCV4	ADCV3	ADCV2	ADCV1	ADCV0
Reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 8-8. Compare Value Low Register(ADCCVL)

8.3.7 Configuration Register (ADCCFG)

ADCCFG selects the mode of operation, clock source, clock divide, and configures for low power and long sample time.

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	ADLPC	ADIV		ADLSMP	MODE		ADICLK	
Reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 8-9. Configuration Register (ADCCFG)

Table 8-6. ADCCFG Register Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7 ADLPC	**Low-Power Configuration** — ADLPC controls the speed and power configuration of the successive approximation converter. This optimizes power consumption when higher sample rates are not required. 0 High speed configuration 1 Low power configuration: {FC31}The power is reduced at the expense of maximum clock speed.
6:5 ADIV	**Clock Divide Select** — ADIV selects the divide ratio used by the ADC to generate the internal clock ADCK. Table 8-7 shows the available clock configurations.
4 ADLSMP	**Long Sample Time Configuration** — ADLSMP selects between long and short sample time. This adjusts the sample period to allow higher impedance inputs to be accurately sampled or to maximize conversion speed for lower impedance inputs. Longer sample times can also be used to lower overall power consumption when continuous conversions are enabled if high conversion rates are not required. 0 Short sample time 1 Long sample time
3:2 MODE	**Conversion Mode Selection** — MODE bits select between 10- or 8-bit operation. See Table 8-8.
1:0 ADICLK	**Input Clock Select** — ADICLK bits select the input clock source to generate the internal clock ADCK. See Table 8-9.

Table 8-7. Clock Divide Select

ADIV	Divide Ratio	Clock Rate
00	1	Input clock
01	2	Input clock ÷ 2
10	4	Input clock ÷ 4
11	8	Input clock ÷ 8

Table 8-8. Conversion Modes

MODE	Mode Description
00	8-bit conversion (N=8)
01	Reserved
10	10-bit conversion (N=10)
11	Reserved

Table 8-9. Input Clock Select

ADICLK	Selected Clock Source
00	Bus clock
01	Bus clock divided by 2
10	Alternate clock (ALTCLK)
11	Asynchronous clock (ADACK)

8.3.8 Pin Control 1 Register (APCTL1)

The pin control registers disable the digital interface to the associated MCU pins used as analog inputs to reduce digital noise and improve conversion accuracy. APCTL1 controls the pins associated with channels 0–7 of the ADC module.

Some MCUs may not use all bits implemented in this register. Bits in this register that do not have associated external analog inputs have no control function. Consult the ADC channel assignment in the module introduction.

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	ADPC7	ADPC6	ADPC5	ADPC4	ADPC3	ADPC2	ADPC1	ADPC0
Reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 8-10. Pin Control 1 Register (APCTL1)

Table 8-10. APCTL1 Register Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7 ADPC7	**ADC Pin Control 7** — ADPC7 controls the pin associated with channel AD7. 0 AD7 pin I/O control enabled 1 AD7 pin I/O control disabled
6 ADPC6	**ADC Pin Control 6** — ADPC6 controls the pin associated with channel AD6. 0 AD6 pin I/O control enabled 1 AD6 pin I/O control disabled
5 ADPC5	**ADC Pin Control 5** — ADPC5 controls the pin associated with channel AD5. 0 AD5 pin I/O control enabled 1 AD5 pin I/O control disabled
4 ADPC4	**ADC Pin Control 4** — ADPC4 controls the pin associated with channel AD4. 0 AD4 pin I/O control enabled 1 AD4 pin I/O control disabled
3 ADPC3	**ADC Pin Control 3** — ADPC3 controls the pin associated with channel AD3. 0 AD3 pin I/O control enabled 1 AD3 pin I/O control disabled
2 ADPC2	**ADC Pin Control 2** — ADPC2 controls the pin associated with channel AD2. 0 AD2 pin I/O control enabled 1 AD2 pin I/O control disabled

Table 8-10. APCTL1 Register Field Descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
1 ADPC1	**ADC Pin Control 1** — ADPC1 controls the pin associated with channel AD1. 0 AD1 pin I/O control enabled 1 AD1 pin I/O control disabled
0 ADPC0	**ADC Pin Control 0** — ADPC0 controls the pin associated with channel AD0. 0 AD0 pin I/O control enabled 1 AD0 pin I/O control disabled

8.3.9 Pin Control 2 Register (APCTL2)

The pin control registers disable the digital interface to the associated MCU pins used as analog inputs to reduce digital noise and improve conversion accuracy. APCTL2 controls channels 8–15 of the ADC module. This register is not implemented on MCUs that do not have associated external analog inputs. Consult the ADC channel assignment in the module introduction for information on availability of this register.

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	ADPC15	ADPC14	ADPC13	ADPC12	ADPC11	ADPC10	ADPC9	ADPC8
Reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 8-11. Pin Control 2 Register (APCTL2)

Table 8-11. APCTL2 Register Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7 ADPC15	**ADC Pin Control 15** — ADPC15 controls the pin associated with channel AD15. 0 AD15 pin I/O control enabled 1 AD15 pin I/O control disabled
6 ADPC14	**ADC Pin Control 14** — ADPC14 controls the pin associated with channel AD14. 0 AD14 pin I/O control enabled 1 AD14 pin I/O control disabled
5 ADPC13	**ADC Pin Control 13** — ADPC13 controls the pin associated with channel AD13. 0 AD13 pin I/O control enabled 1 AD13 pin I/O control disabled
4 ADPC12	**ADC Pin Control 12** — ADPC12 controls the pin associated with channel AD12. 0 AD12 pin I/O control enabled 1 AD12 pin I/O control disabled
3 ADPC11	**ADC Pin Control 11** — ADPC11 controls the pin associated with channel AD11. 0 AD11 pin I/O control enabled 1 AD11 pin I/O control disabled
2 ADPC10	**ADC Pin Control 10** — ADPC10 controls the pin associated with channel AD10. 0 AD10 pin I/O control enabled 1 AD10 pin I/O control disabled

Table 8-11. APCTL2 Register Field Descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
1 ADPC9	**ADC Pin Control 9** — ADPC9 controls the pin associated with channel AD9. 0 AD9 pin I/O control enabled 1 AD9 pin I/O control disabled
0 ADPC8	**ADC Pin Control 8** — ADPC8 controls the pin associated with channel AD8. 0 AD8 pin I/O control enabled 1 AD8 pin I/O control disabled

8.3.10 Pin Control 3 Register (APCTL3)

The pin control registers disable the digital interface to the associated MCU pins used as analog inputs to reduce digital noise and improve conversion accuracy. APCTL3 controls channels 16–23 of the ADC module. This register is not implemented on MCUs that do not have associated external analog inputs. Consult the ADC channel assignment in the module introduction for information on availability of this register.

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	ADPC23	ADPC22	ADPC21	ADPC20	ADPC19	ADPC18	ADPC17	ADPC16
Reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 8-12. Pin Control 3 Register (APCTL3)

Table 8-12. APCTL3 Register Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7 ADPC23	**ADC Pin Control 23** — ADPC23 controls the pin associated with channel AD23. 0 AD23 pin I/O control enabled 1 AD23 pin I/O control disabled
6 ADPC22	**ADC Pin Control 22** — ADPC22 controls the pin associated with channel AD22. 0 AD22 pin I/O control enabled 1 AD22 pin I/O control disabled
5 ADPC21	**ADC Pin Control 21** — ADPC21 controls the pin associated with channel AD21. 0 AD21 pin I/O control enabled 1 AD21 pin I/O control disabled
4 ADPC20	**ADC Pin Control 20** — ADPC20 controls the pin associated with channel AD20. 0 AD20 pin I/O control enabled 1 AD20 pin I/O control disabled
3 ADPC19	**ADC Pin Control 19** — ADPC19 controls the pin associated with channel AD19. 0 AD19 pin I/O control enabled 1 AD19 pin I/O control disabled
2 ADPC18	**ADC Pin Control 18** — ADPC18 controls the pin associated with channel AD18. 0 AD18 pin I/O control enabled 1 AD18 pin I/O control disabled

Table 8-12. APCTL3 Register Field Descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
1 ADPC17	**ADC Pin Control 17** — ADPC17 controls the pin associated with channel AD17. 0 AD17 pin I/O control enabled 1 AD17 pin I/O control disabled
0 ADPC16	**ADC Pin Control 16** — ADPC16 controls the pin associated with channel AD16. 0 AD16 pin I/O control enabled 1 AD16 pin I/O control disabled

8.4 Functional Description

The ADC module is disabled during reset or when the ADCH bits are all high. The module is idle when a conversion has completed and another conversion has not been initiated. When idle, the module is in its lowest power state.

The ADC can perform an analog-to-digital conversion on any of the software selectable channels. The selected channel voltage is converted by a successive approximation algorithm into an 11-bit digital result. In 8-bit mode, the selected channel voltage is converted by a successive approximation algorithm into a 9-bit digital result.

When the conversion is completed, the result is placed in the data registers (ADCRH and ADCRL).In 10-bit mode, the result is rounded to 10 bits and placed in ADCRH and ADCRL. In 8-bit mode, the result is rounded to 8 bits and placed in ADCRL. The conversion complete flag (COCO) is then set and an interrupt is generated if the conversion complete interrupt has been enabled (AIEN = 1).

The ADC module has the capability of automatically comparing the result of a conversion with the contents of its compare registers. The compare function is enabled by setting the ACFE bit and operates with any of the conversion modes and configurations.

8.4.1 Clock Select and Divide Control

One of four clock sources can be selected as the clock source for the ADC module. This clock source is then divided by a configurable value to generate the input clock to the converter (ADCK). The clock is selected from one of the following sources by means of the ADICLK bits.

- The bus clock, which is equal to the frequency at which software is executed. This is the default selection following reset.
- The bus clock divided by two. For higher bus clock rates, this allows a maximum divide by 16 of the bus clock.
- ALTCLK, as defined for this MCU (See module section introduction).
- The asynchronous clock (ADACK). This clock is generated from a clock source within the ADC module. When selected as the clock source, this clock remains active while the MCU is in wait or stop3 mode and allows conversions in these modes for lower noise operation.

Whichever clock is selected, its frequency must fall within the specified frequency range for ADCK. If the available clocks are too slow, the ADC does not perform according to specifications. If the available clocks are too fast, the clock must be divided to the appropriate frequency. This divider is specified by the ADIV bits and can be divide-by 1, 2, 4, or 8.

8.4.2 Input Select and Pin Control

The pin control registers (APCTLx) disable the digital interface to the I/O of the pins used as analog inputs. When a pin control register bit is set, the following conditions are forced for the associated MCU pin:

- The output buffer is forced to its high impedance state.
- The input buffer is disabled. A read of the I/O port returns a zero for any pin with its input buffer disabled.
- The pullup is disabled.

8.4.3 Hardware Trigger

The ADC module has a selectable asynchronous hardware conversion trigger, ADHWT, that is enabled when the ADTRG bit is set. This source is not available on all MCUs. Consult the module introduction for information on the ADHWT source specific to this MCU.

When ADHWT source is available and hardware trigger is enabled (ADTRG=1), a conversion is initiated on the rising edge of ADHWT. If a conversion is in progress when a rising edge occurs, the rising edge is ignored. In continuous convert configuration, only the initial rising edge to launch continuous conversions is observed. The hardware trigger function operates in conjunction with any of the conversion modes and configurations.

8.4.4 Conversion Control

Conversions can be performed in either 10-bit mode or 8-bit mode as determined by the MODE bits. Conversions can be initiated by either a software or hardware trigger. In addition, the ADC module can be configured for low power operation, long sample time, continuous conversion, and automatic compare of the conversion result to a software determined compare value.

8.4.4.1 Initiating Conversions

A conversion is initiated:

- Following a write to ADCSC1 (with ADCH bits not all 1s) if software triggered operation is selected.
- Following a hardware trigger (ADHWT) event if hardware triggered operation is selected.
- Following the transfer of the result to the data registers when continuous conversion is enabled.

If continuous conversions are enabled, a new conversion is automatically initiated after the completion of the current conversion. In software triggered operation, continuous conversions begin after ADCSC1 is written and continue until aborted. In hardware triggered operation, continuous conversions begin after a hardware trigger event and continue until aborted.

8.4.4.2 Completing Conversions

A conversion is completed when the result of the conversion is transferred into the data result registers, ADCRH and ADCRL. This is indicated by the setting of COCO. An interrupt is generated if AIEN is high at the time that COCO is set.

A blocking mechanism prevents a new result from overwriting previous data in ADCRH and ADCRL if the previous data is in the process of being read while in 10-bit MODE (the ADCRH register has been read but the ADCRL register has not). When blocking is active, the data transfer is blocked, COCO is not set, and the new result is lost. In the case of single conversions with the compare function enabled and the compare condition false, blocking has no effect and ADC operation is terminated. In all other cases of operation, when a data transfer is blocked, another conversion is initiated regardless of the state of ADCO (single or continuous conversions enabled).

If single conversions are enabled, the blocking mechanism could result in several discarded conversions and excess power consumption. To avoid this issue, the data registers must not be read after initiating a single conversion until the conversion completes.

8.4.4.3 Aborting Conversions

Any conversion in progress is aborted when:

- A write to ADCSC1 occurs (the current conversion will be aborted and a new conversion will be initiated, if ADCH are not all 1s).
- A write to ADCSC2, ADCCFG, ADCCVH, or ADCCVL occurs. This indicates a mode of operation change has occurred and the current conversion is therefore invalid.
- The MCU is reset.
- The MCU enters stop mode with ADACK not enabled.

When a conversion is aborted, the contents of the data registers, ADCRH and ADCRL, are not altered. However, they continue to be the values transferred after the completion of the last successful conversion. If the conversion was aborted by a reset, ADCRH and ADCRL return to their reset states.

8.4.4.4 Power Control

The ADC module remains in its idle state until a conversion is initiated. If ADACK is selected as the conversion clock source, the ADACK clock generator is also enabled.

Power consumption when active can be reduced by setting ADLPC. This results in a lower maximum value for f_{ADCK} (see the electrical specifications).

8.4.4.5 Sample Time and Total Conversion Time

The total conversion time depends on the sample time (as determined by ADLSMP), the MCU bus frequency, the conversion mode (8-bit or 10-bit), and the frequency of the conversion clock (f_{ADCK}). After the module becomes active, sampling of the input begins. ADLSMP selects between short and long sample times.When sampling is complete, the converter is isolated from the input channel and a successive approximation algorithm is performed to determine the digital value of the analog signal. The result of the conversion is transferred to ADCRH and ADCRL upon completion of the conversion algorithm.

If the bus frequency is less than the f_{ADCK} frequency, precise sample time for continuous conversions cannot be guaranteed when short sample is enabled (ADLSMP=0). If the bus frequency is less than 1/11th of the f_{ADCK} frequency, precise sample time for continuous conversions cannot be guaranteed when long sample is enabled (ADLSMP=1).

The maximum total conversion time for different conditions is summarized in Table 8-13.

Table 8-13. Total Conversion Time vs. Control Conditions

Conversion Type	ADICLK	ADLSMP	Max Total Conversion Time
Single or first continuous 8-bit	0x, 10	0	20 ADCK cycles + 5 bus clock cycles
Single or first continuous 10-bit	0x, 10	0	23 ADCK cycles + 5 bus clock cycles
Single or first continuous 8-bit	0x, 10	1	40 ADCK cycles + 5 bus clock cycles
Single or first continuous 10-bit	0x, 10	1	43 ADCK cycles + 5 bus clock cycles
Single or first continuous 8-bit	11	0	5 μs + 20 ADCK + 5 bus clock cycles
Single or first continuous 10-bit	11	0	5 μs + 23 ADCK + 5 bus clock cycles
Single or first continuous 8-bit	11	1	5 μs + 40 ADCK + 5 bus clock cycles
Single or first continuous 10-bit	11	1	5 μs + 43 ADCK + 5 bus clock cycles
Subsequent continuous 8-bit; $f_{BUS} \geq f_{ADCK}$	xx	0	17 ADCK cycles
Subsequent continuous 10-bit; $f_{BUS} \geq f_{ADCK}$	xx	0	20 ADCK cycles
Subsequent continuous 8-bit; $f_{BUS} \geq f_{ADCK}/11$	xx	1	37 ADCK cycles
Subsequent continuous 10-bit; $f_{BUS} \geq f_{ADCK}/11$	xx	1	40 ADCK cycles

The maximum total conversion time is determined by the clock source chosen and the divide ratio selected. The clock source is selectable by the ADICLK bits, and the divide ratio is specified by the ADIV bits. For example, in 10-bit mode, with the bus clock selected as the input clock source, the input clock divide-by-1 ratio selected, and a bus frequency of 8 MHz, then the conversion time for a single conversion is:

$$\text{Conversion time} = \frac{\text{23 ADCK cyc}}{\text{8 MHz/1}} + \frac{\text{5 bus cyc}}{\text{8 MHz}} = 3.5\ \mu\text{s}$$

$$\text{Number of bus cycles} = 3.5\ \mu\text{s} \times 8\ \text{MHz} = 28\ \text{cycles}$$

NOTE

The ADCK frequency must be between f_{ADCK} minimum and f_{ADCK} maximum to meet ADC specifications.

8.4.5 Automatic Compare Function

The compare function is enabled by the ACFE bit. The compare function can be configured to check for an upper or lower limit. After the input is sampled and converted, the compare value (ADCCVH and ADCCVL) is subtracted from the conversion result. When comparing to an upper limit (ACFGT = 1), if the conversion result is greater-than or equal-to the compare value, COCO is set. When comparing to a lower limit (ACFGT = 0), if the result is less than the compare value, COCO is set. An ADC interrupt is generated upon the setting of COCO if the ADC interrupt is enabled (AIEN = 1).

The subtract operation of two positive values (the conversion result less the compare value) results in a signed value that is 1-bit wider than the bit-width of the two terms. The final value transferred to the ADCRH and ADCRL registers is the result of the subtraction operation, excluding the sign bit. The value of the sign bit can be derived based on ACFGT control setting. When ACFGT=1, the sign bit of any value stored in ADCRH and ADCRL is always 0, indicating a positive result for the subtract operation. When ACFGT = 1, the sign bit of any result is always 1, indicating a negative result for the subtract operation.

Upon completion of a conversion while the compare function is enabled, if the compare condition is not true, COCO is not set and no data is transferred to the result registers.

NOTE

The compare function can monitor the voltage on a channel while the MCU is in wait or stop3 mode. The ADC interrupt wakes the MCU when the compare condition is met.

An example of compare operation eases understanding of the compare feature. If the ADC is configured for 10-bit operation, ACFGT=0, and ADCCVH:ADCCVL= 0x200, then a conversion result of 0x080 causes the compare condition to be met and the COCO bit is set. A value of 0x280 is stored in ADCRH:ADCRL. This is signed data without the sign bit and must be combined with a derived sign bit to have meaning. The value stored in ADCRH:ADCRL is calculated as follows.

The value to interpret from the data is (Result – Compare Value) = (0x080 – 0x200) = –0x180. A standard method for handling subtraction is to convert the second term to its 2’s complement, and then add the two terms. First calculate the 2’s complement of 0x200 by complementing each bit and adding 1. Note that prior to complementing, a sign bit of 0 is added so that the 10-bit compare value becomes a 11-bit signed value that is always positive.

```
  %101 1111 1111        <= 1’s complement of 0x200 compare value
+             %1
  ---------------
  %110 0000 0000        <= 2’s complement of 0x200 compare value
```

Then the conversion result of 0x080 is added to 2’s complement of 0x200:

```
  %000 1000 0000
+ %110 0000 0000
  ---------------
   %110 1000 0000       <= Subtraction result is –0x180 in signed 11-bit data
```

The subtraction result is an 11-bit signed value. The lower 10 bits (0x280) are stored in ADCRH:ADCRL. The sign bit is known to be 1 (negative) because the ACFGT=0, the COCO bit was set, and conversion data was updated in ADCRH:ADCRL.

A simpler way to use the data stored in ADCRH:ADCRL is to apply the following rules. When comparing for upper limit (ACFGT=1), the value in ADCRH:ADCRL is a positive value and does not need to be manipulated. This value is the difference between the conversion result and the compare value. When comparing for lower limit (ACFGT=0), ADCRH:ADCRL is a negative value without the sign bit. If the value from these registers is complemented and then a value of 1 is added, then the calculated value is the unsigned (i.e., absolute) difference between the conversion result and the compare value. In the previous example, 0x280 is stored in ADCRH:ADCRL. The following example shows how the absolute value of the difference is calculated.

```
%01 0111 1111 <= Complement of 10-bit value stored in ADCRH:ADCRL
+           %1
---------------
 %01 1000 0000<= Unsigned value 0x180 is the absolute value of (Result - Compare Value)
```

8.4.6 MCU Wait Mode Operation

Wait mode is a lower power-consumption standby mode from which recovery is fast because the clock sources remain active. If a conversion is in progress when the MCU enters wait mode, it continues until completion. Conversions can be initiated while the MCU is in wait mode by means of the hardware trigger or if continuous conversions are enabled.

The bus clock, bus clock divided by two, and ADACK are available as conversion clock sources while in wait mode. The use of ALTCLK as the conversion clock source in wait is dependent on the definition of ALTCLK for this MCU. Consult the module introduction for information on ALTCLK specific to this MCU.

A conversion complete event sets the COCO and generates an ADC interrupt to wake the MCU from wait mode if the ADC interrupt is enabled (AIEN = 1).

8.4.7 MCU Stop3 Mode Operation

Stop mode is a low power-consumption standby mode during which most or all clock sources on the MCU are disabled.

8.4.7.1 Stop3 Mode With ADACK Disabled

If the asynchronous clock, ADACK, is not selected as the conversion clock, executing a stop instruction aborts the current conversion and places the ADC in its idle state. The contents of ADCRH and ADCRL are unaffected by stop3 mode.After exiting from stop3 mode, a software or hardware trigger is required to resume conversions.

8.4.7.2 Stop3 Mode With ADACK Enabled

If ADACK is selected as the conversion clock, the ADC continues operation during stop3 mode. For guaranteed ADC operation, the MCU's voltage regulator must remain active during stop3 mode. Consult the module introduction for configuration information for this MCU.

If a conversion is in progress when the MCU enters stop3 mode, it continues until completion. Conversions can be initiated while the MCU is in stop3 mode by means of the hardware trigger or if continuous conversions are enabled.

A conversion complete event sets the COCO and generates an ADC interrupt to wake the MCU from stop3 mode if the ADC interrupt is enabled (AIEN = 1).

NOTE

The ADC module can wake the system from low-power stop and cause the MCU to begin consuming run-level currents without generating a system level interrupt. To prevent this scenario, software should ensure the data transfer blocking mechanism (discussed in Section 8.4.4.2, "Completing Conversions) is cleared when entering stop3 and continuing ADC conversions.

8.4.8 MCU Stop2 Mode Operation

The ADC module is automatically disabled when the MCU enters stop2 mode. All module registers contain their reset values following exit from stop2. Therefore, the module must be re-enabled and re-configured following exit from stop2.

8.5 Initialization Information

This section gives an example that provides some basic direction on how to initialize and configure the ADC module. You can configure the module for 8-bit or 10-bit resolution, single or continuous conversion, and a polled or interrupt approach, among many other options. Refer to Table 8-7, Table 8-8, and Table 8-9 for information used in this example.

NOTE

Hexadecimal values designated by a preceding 0x, binary values designated by a preceding %, and decimal values have no preceding character.

8.5.1 ADC Module Initialization Example

8.5.1.1 Initialization Sequence

Before the ADC module can be used to complete conversions, an initialization procedure must be performed. A typical sequence is as follows:

1. Update the configuration register (ADCCFG) to select the input clock source and the divide ratio used to generate the internal clock, ADCK. This register is also used for selecting sample time and low-power configuration.

2. Update status and control register 2 (ADCSC2) to select the conversion trigger (hardware or software) and compare function options, if enabled.
3. Update status and control register 1 (ADCSC1) to select whether conversions will be continuous or completed only once, and to enable or disable conversion complete interrupts. The input channel on which conversions will be performed is also selected here.

8.5.1.2 Pseudo-Code Example

In this example, the ADC module is set up with interrupts enabled to perform a single 10-bit conversion at low power with a long sample time on input channel 1, where the internal ADCK clock is derived from the bus clock divided by 1.

ADCCFG = 0x98 (%10011000)

```
Bit 7     ADLPC     1         Configures for low power (lowers maximum clock speed)
Bit 6:5   ADIV      00        Sets the ADCK to the input clock ÷ 1
Bit 4     ADLSMP    1         Configures for long sample time
Bit 3:2   MODE      10        Sets mode at 10-bit conversions
Bit 1:0   ADICLK    00        Selects bus clock as input clock source
```

ADCSC2 = 0x00 (%00000000)

```
Bit 7     ADACT     0         Flag indicates if a conversion is in progress
Bit 6     ADTRG     0         Software trigger selected
Bit 5     ACFE      0         Compare function disabled
Bit 4     ACFGT     0         Not used in this example
Bit 3:2             00        Reserved, always reads zero
Bit 1:0             00        Reserved for Freescale's internal use; always write zero
```

ADCSC1 = 0x41 (%01000001)

```
Bit 7     COCO      0         Read-only flag which is set when a conversion completes
Bit 6     AIEN      1         Conversion complete interrupt enabled
Bit 5     ADCO      0         One conversion only (continuous conversions disabled)
Bit 4:0   ADCH      00001     Input channel 1 selected as ADC input channel
```

ADCRH/L = 0xxx

```
        Holds results of conversion. Read high byte (ADCRH) before low byte (ADCRL) so that
conversion data cannot be overwritten with data from the next conversion.
```

ADCCVH/L = 0xxx

```
        Holds compare value when compare function enabled
```

APCTL1=0x02

```
        AD1 pin I/O control disabled. All other AD pins remain general purpose I/O pins
```

APCTL2=0x00

```
        All other AD pins remain general purpose I/O pins
```

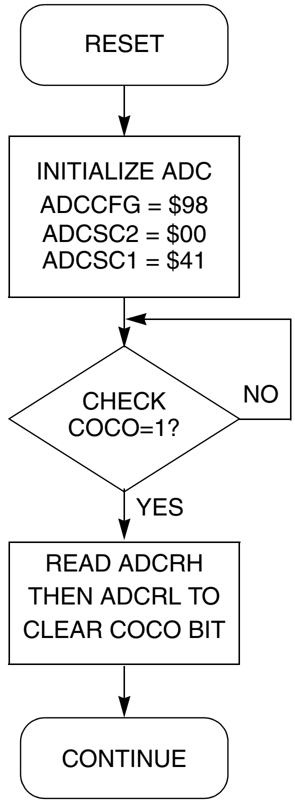


Figure 8-13. Initialization Flowchart for Example

8.6 Application Information

This section contains information for using the ADC module in applications. The ADC has been designed for integration into a microcontroller used in embedded control applications requiring an A/D converter.

8.6.1 External Pins and Routing

The following sections discuss the external pins associated with the ADC module and how they should be used for best results.

8.6.1.1 Analog Supply Pins

The ADC module has analog power and ground supplies (V_{DDA} and V_{SSA}) available as separate pins on some devices. V_{SSA} is shared on the same pin as the MCU digital V_{SS} on some devices. On other devices, V_{SSA} and V_{DDA} are shared with the MCU digital supply pins. In these cases, there are separate pads for the analog supplies which are bonded to the same pin as the corresponding digital supply so that some degree of isolation between the supplies is maintained.

When available on a separate pin, both V_{DDA} and V_{SSA} must be connected to the same voltage potential as their corresponding MCU digital supply (V_{DD} and V_{SS}) and must be routed carefully for maximum noise immunity and bypass capacitors placed as near as possible to the package.

If separate power supplies are used for analog and digital power, the ground connection between these supplies must be at the V_{SSA} pin. This should be the only ground connection between these supplies if possible. The V_{SSA} pin makes a good single point ground location.

8.6.1.2 Analog Reference Pins

In addition to the analog supplies, the ADC module has connections for two reference voltage inputs. The high reference is V_{REFH}, which may be shared on the same pin as V_{DDA} on some devices. The low reference is V_{REFL}, which may be shared on the same pin as V_{SSA} on some devices.

When available on a separate pin, V_{REFH} may be connected to the same potential as V_{DDA}, or may be driven by an external source between the minimum V_{DDA} spec and the V_{DDA} potential (V_{REFH} must never exceed V_{DDA}). When available on a separate pin, V_{REFL} must be connected to the same voltage potential as V_{SSA}. V_{REFH} and V_{REFL} must be routed carefully for maximum noise immunity and bypass capacitors placed as near as possible to the package.

AC current in the form of current spikes required to supply charge to the capacitor array at each successive approximation step is drawn through the V_{REFH} and V_{REFL} loop. The best external component to meet this current demand is a 0.1 μF capacitor with good high frequency characteristics. This capacitor is connected between V_{REFH} and V_{REFL} and must be placed as near as possible to the package pins. Resistance in the path is not recommended because the current causes a voltage drop that could result in conversion errors. Inductance in this path must be minimum (parasitic only).

8.6.1.3 Analog Input Pins

The external analog inputs are typically shared with digital I/O pins on MCU devices. The pin I/O control is disabled by setting the appropriate control bit in one of the pin control registers. Conversions can be performed on inputs without the associated pin control register bit set. It is recommended that the pin control register bit always be set when using a pin as an analog input. This avoids problems with contention because the output buffer is in its high impedance state and the pullup is disabled. Also, the input buffer draws dc current when its input is not at V_{DD} or V_{SS}. Setting the pin control register bits for all pins used as analog inputs should be done to achieve lowest operating current.

Empirical data shows that capacitors on the analog inputs improve performance in the presence of noise or when the source impedance is high. Use of 0.01 μF capacitors with good high-frequency characteristics is sufficient. These capacitors are not necessary in all cases, but when used they must be placed as near as possible to the package pins and be referenced to V_{SSA}.

For proper conversion, the input voltage must fall between V_{REFH} and V_{REFL}. If the input is equal to or exceeds V_{REFH}, the converter circuit converts the signal to 0x3FF (full scale 10-bit representation) or 0xFF (full scale 8-bit representation). If the input is equal to or less than V_{REFL}, the converter circuit converts it to 0x000. Input voltages between V_{REFH} and V_{REFL} are straight-line linear conversions. There is a brief current associated with V_{REFL} when the sampling capacitor is charging. The input is sampled for 3.5 cycles of the ADCK source when ADLSMP is low, or 23.5 cycles when ADLSMP is high.

For minimal loss of accuracy due to current injection, pins adjacent to the analog input pins should not be transitioning during conversions.

8.6.2 Sources of Error

Several sources of error exist for A/D conversions. These are discussed in the following sections.

8.6.2.1 Sampling Error

For proper conversions, the input must be sampled long enough to achieve the proper accuracy. Given the maximum input resistance of approximately 7kΩ and input capacitance of approximately 5.5 pF, sampling to within 1/4LSB (at 10-bit resolution) can be achieved within the minimum sample window (3.5 cycles @ 8 MHz maximum ADCK frequency) provided the resistance of the external analog source (R_{AS}) is kept below 5 kΩ.

Higher source resistances or higher-accuracy sampling is possible by setting ADLSMP (to increase the sample window to 23.5 cycles) or decreasing ADCK frequency to increase sample time.

8.6.2.2 Pin Leakage Error

Leakage on the I/O pins can cause conversion error if the external analog source resistance (R_{AS}) is high. If this error cannot be tolerated by the application, keep R_{AS} lower than V_{DDA} / (2^N*I_{LEAK}) for less than 1/4LSB leakage error (N = 8 in 8-bit mode or 10 in 10-bit mode).

8.6.2.3 Noise-Induced Errors

System noise that occurs during the sample or conversion process can affect the accuracy of the conversion. The ADC accuracy numbers are guaranteed as specified only if the following conditions are met:

- There is a 0.1 µF low-ESR capacitor from V_{REFH} to V_{REFL}.
- There is a 0.1 µF low-ESR capacitor from V_{DDA} to V_{SSA}.
- If inductive isolation is used from the primary supply, an additional 1 µF capacitor is placed from V_{DDA} to V_{SSA}.
- V_{SSA} (and V_{REFL}, if connected) is connected to V_{SS} at a quiet point in the ground plane.
- Operate the MCU in wait or stop3 mode before initiating (hardware triggered conversions) or immediately after initiating (hardware or software triggered conversions) the ADC conversion.
  - For software triggered conversions, immediately follow the write to ADCSC1 with a wait instruction or stop instruction.
  - For stop3 mode operation, select ADACK as the clock source. Operation in stop3 reduces V_{DD} noise but increases effective conversion time due to stop recovery.
- There is no I/O switching, input or output, on the MCU during the conversion.

There are some situations where external system activity causes radiated or conducted noise emissions or excessive V_{DD} noise is coupled into the ADC. In these situations, or when the MCU cannot be placed in wait or stop3 or I/O activity cannot be halted, these recommended actions may reduce the effect of noise on the accuracy:

- Place a 0.01 µF capacitor (C_{AS}) on the selected input channel to V_{REFL} or V_{SSA} (this improves noise issues, but affects the sample rate based on the external analog source resistance).

- Average the result by converting the analog input many times in succession and dividing the sum of the results. Four samples are required to eliminate the effect of a 1LSB, one-time error.
- Reduce the effect of synchronous noise by operating off the asynchronous clock (ADACK) and averaging. Noise that is synchronous to ADCK cannot be averaged out.

8.6.2.4 Code Width and Quantization Error

The ADC quantizes the ideal straight-line transfer function into 1024 steps (in 10-bit mode). Each step ideally has the same height (1 code) and width. The width is defined as the delta between the transition points to one code and the next. The ideal code width for an N bit converter (in this case N can be 8 or 10), defined as 1LSB, is:

$$1LSB = (V_{REFH} - V_{REFL}) / 2^N \qquad \textit{Eqn. 8-2}$$

There is an inherent quantization error due to the digitization of the result. For 8-bit or 10-bit conversions the code transitions when the voltage is at the midpoint between the points where the straight line transfer function is exactly represented by the actual transfer function. Therefore, the quantization error will be ± 1/2LSB in 8- or 10-bit mode. As a consequence, however, the code width of the first (0x000) conversion is only 1/2LSB and the code width of the last (0xFF or 0x3FF) is 1.5LSB.

8.6.2.5 Linearity Errors

The ADC may also exhibit non-linearity of several forms. Every effort has been made to reduce these errors but the system should be aware of them because they affect overall accuracy. These errors are:

- Zero-scale error (E_{ZS}) (sometimes called offset) — This error is defined as the difference between the actual code width of the first conversion and the ideal code width (1/2LSB). If the first conversion is 0x001, then the difference between the actual 0x001 code width and its ideal (1LSB) is used.
- Full-scale error (E_{FS}) — This error is defined as the difference between the actual code width of the last conversion and the ideal code width (1.5LSB). If the last conversion is 0x3FE, then the difference between the actual 0x3FE code width and its ideal (1LSB) is used.
- Differential non-linearity (DNL) — This error is defined as the worst-case difference between the actual code width and the ideal code width for all conversions.
- Integral non-linearity (INL) — This error is defined as the highest-value the (absolute value of the) running sum of DNL achieves. More simply, this is the worst-case difference of the actual transition voltage to a given code and its corresponding ideal transition voltage, for all codes.
- Total unadjusted error (TUE) — This error is defined as the difference between the actual transfer function and the ideal straight-line transfer function and includes all forms of error.

8.6.2.6 Code Jitter, Non-Monotonicity, and Missing Codes

Analog-to-digital converters are susceptible to three special forms of error. These are code jitter, non-monotonicity, and missing codes.

Code jitter is when, at certain points, a given input voltage converts to one of two values when sampled repeatedly. Ideally, when the input voltage is infinitesimally smaller than the transition voltage, the converter yields the lower code (and vice-versa). However, even small amounts of system noise can cause the converter to be indeterminate (between two codes) for a range of input voltages around the transition voltage. This range is normally around ±1/2 LSB and increases with noise. This error may be reduced by repeatedly sampling the input and averaging the result. Additionally the techniques discussed in Section 8.6.2.3 reduces this error.

Non-monotonicity is defined as when, except for code jitter, the converter converts to a lower code for a higher input voltage. Missing codes are those values never converted for any input value.

In 8-bit or 10-bit mode, the ADC is guaranteed to be monotonic and have no missing codes.

Chapter 9
Internal Clock Source (S08ICSV3)

9.1 Introduction

The internal clock source (ICS) module provides clock source choices for the MCU. The module contains a frequency-locked loop (FLL) as a clock source that is controllable by either an internal or an external reference clock. The module can provide this FLL clock or either of the internal or external reference clocks as a source for the MCU system clock. There are also signals provided to control a low power oscillator (XOSC) module to allow the use of an external crystal/resonator as the external reference clock.

Whichever clock source is chosen, it is passed through a reduced bus divider (BDIV) which allows a lower final output clock frequency to be derived.

The bus frequency will be one-half of the ICSOUT frequency.

NOTE

The MC9S08SC4 series supports a narrower low frequency external reference range than the standard ICS specification. All references to range "31.25 kHz to 39.0625 kHz" in this chapter should be limited to " 32.0 kHz to 38.4 kHz".

9.1.1 DCO Select Bits

The MC9S08SC4 series is configured to support only the low and mid range DCO; therefore, the only DRS and DRST bit settings in ISCSC which have any effect are the ones for these ranges.

9.1.2 Module Configuration

When the internal reference is enabled in stop mode (IREFSTEN = 1), the voltage regulator must also be enabled in stop mode by setting the LVDE and LVDSE bits in the SPMSC1 register.

Figure 9-1 shows the MC9S08SC4 block diagram with the ICS module highlighted.

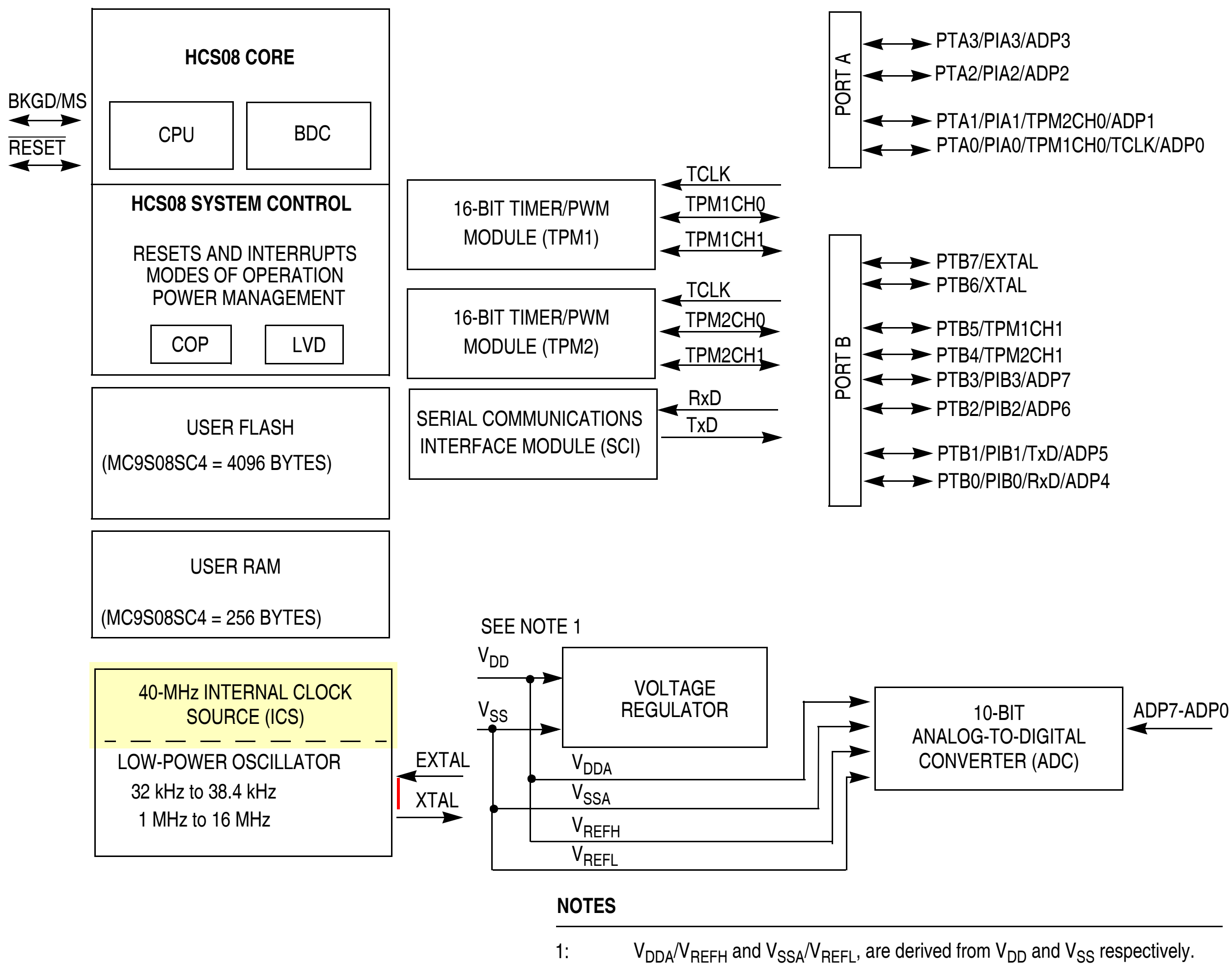


Figure 9-1. MC9S08SC4 Block Diagram with ICS Module Highlighted

The ICS external reference clock can be the external crystal/resonator (OSCOUT) supplied by an OSC, or it can be another external clock source.

9.1.3 Features

Key features of the ICS module are:

- Frequency-locked loop (FLL) is trimmable for accuracy
- Internal or external reference clocks can be used to control the FLL
- Reference divider is provided for external clock
- Internal reference clock has 9 trim bits available
- Internal or external reference clocks can be selected as the clock source for the MCU
- Whichever clock is selected as the source can be divided down
  - 2-bit select for clock divider is provided
    - Allowable dividers are: 1, 2, 4, 8
- Control signals for a low power oscillator clock generator (OSCOUT) as the ICS external reference clock are provided
  - HGO, RANGE, EREFS, ERCLKEN, EREFSTEN
- FLL Engaged Internal mode is automatically selected out of reset
- BDC clock is provided as a constant divide by 2 of the low range DCO output
- Three selectable digitally-controlled oscillators (DCO) optimized for different frequency ranges.
- Option to maximize output frequency for a 32768 Hz external reference clock source.

9.1.4 Block Diagram

Figure 9-2 is the ICS block diagram.

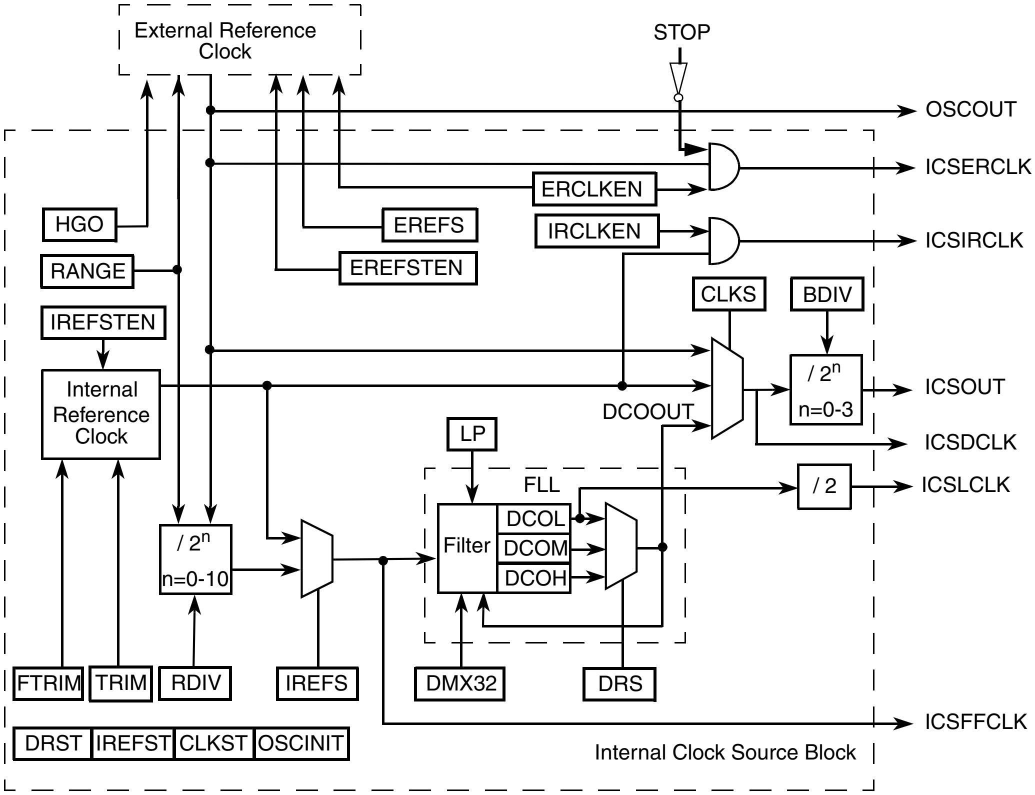


Figure 9-2. Internal Clock Source (ICS) Block Diagram

9.1.5 Modes of Operation

There are seven modes of operation for the ICS: FEI, FEE, FBI, FBILP, FBE, FBELP, and stop.

9.1.5.1 FLL Engaged Internal (FEI)

In FLL engaged internal mode, which is the default mode, the ICS supplies a clock derived from the FLL which is controlled by the internal reference clock. The BDC clock is supplied from the FLL.

9.1.5.2 FLL Engaged External (FEE)

In FLL engaged external mode, the ICS supplies a clock derived from the FLL which is controlled by an external reference clock source. The BDC clock is supplied from the FLL.

9.1.5.3 FLL Bypassed Internal (FBI)

In FLL bypassed internal mode, the FLL is enabled and controlled by the internal reference clock, but is bypassed. The ICS supplies a clock derived from the internal reference clock. The BDC clock is supplied from the FLL.

9.1.5.4 FLL Bypassed Internal Low Power (FBILP)

In FLL bypassed internal low power mode, the FLL is disabled and bypassed, and the ICS supplies a clock derived from the internal reference clock. The BDC clock is not available.

9.1.5.5 FLL Bypassed External (FBE)

In FLL bypassed external mode, the FLL is enabled and controlled by an external reference clock, but is bypassed. The ICS supplies a clock derived from the external reference clock source. The BDC clock is supplied from the FLL.

9.1.5.6 FLL Bypassed External Low Power (FBELP)

In FLL bypassed external low power mode, the FLL is disabled and bypassed, and the ICS supplies a clock derived from the external reference clock. The BDC clock is not available.

9.1.5.7 Stop (STOP)

In stop mode, the FLL is disabled and the internal or the ICS external reference clocks source (OSCOUT) can be selected to be enabled or disabled. The BDC clock is not available and the ICS does not provide an MCU clock source.

NOTE

The DCO frequency changes from the pre-stop value to its reset value and the FLL will need to re-acquire the lock before the frequency is stable. Timing sensitive operations should wait for the FLL acquistition time, tAquire, before executing.

9.2 External Signal Description

There are no ICS signals that connect off chip.

9.3 Register Definition

Figure 9-1 is a summary of ICS registers.

Table 9-1. ICS Register Summary

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Name</th><th>7</th><th>6</th><th>5</th><th>4</th><th>3</th><th>2</th><th>1</th><th>0</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">ICSC1</td><td>R</td><td colspan="2" rowspan="2">CLKS</td><td colspan="3" rowspan="2">RDIV</td><td rowspan="2">IREFS</td><td rowspan="2">IRCLKEN</td><td rowspan="2">IREFSTEN</td></tr>
<tr><td>W</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">ICSC2</td><td>R</td><td colspan="2" rowspan="2">BDIV</td><td rowspan="2">RANGE</td><td rowspan="2">HGO</td><td rowspan="2">LP</td><td rowspan="2">EREFS</td><td rowspan="2">ERCLKEN</td><td rowspan="2">EREFSTEN</td></tr>
<tr><td>W</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">ICSTRM</td><td>R</td><td colspan="8" rowspan="2">TRIM</td></tr>
<tr><td>W</td></tr>
</table>

Table 9-1. ICS Register Summary (continued)

Name		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
ICSSC	R	DRST		DMX32	IREFST	CLKST		OSCINIT	FTRIM
	W	DRS							

9.3.1 ICS Control Register 1 (ICSC1)

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	CLKS		RDIV			IREFS	IRCLKEN	IREFSTEN
Reset:	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0

Figure 9-3. ICS Control Register 1 (ICSC1)

Table 9-2. ICS Control Register 1 Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7:6 CLKS	**Clock Source Select** — Selects the clock source that controls the bus frequency. The actual bus frequency depends on the value of the BDIV bits. 00 Output of FLL is selected. 01 Internal reference clock is selected. 10 External reference clock is selected. 11 Reserved, defaults to 00.
5:3 RDIV	**Reference Divider** — Selects the amount to divide down the external reference clock. Resulting frequency must be in the range 31.25 kHz to 39.0625 kHz. See Table 9-3 for the divide-by factors.
2 IREFS	**Internal Reference Select** — The IREFS bit selects the reference clock source for the FLL. 1 Internal reference clock selected. 0 External reference clock selected.
1 IRCLKEN	**Internal Reference Clock Enable** — The IRCLKEN bit enables the internal reference clock for use as ICSIRCLK. 1 ICSIRCLK active. 0 ICSIRCLK inactive.
0 IREFSTEN	**Internal Reference Stop Enable** — The IREFSTEN bit controls whether or not the internal reference clock remains enabled when the ICS enters stop mode. 1 Internal reference clock stays enabled in stop if IRCLKEN is set before entering stop. 0 Internal reference clock is disabled in stop.

Table 9-3. Reference Divide Factor

RDIV	RANGE=0	RANGE=1
0	1[1]	32
1	2	64
2	4	128
3	8	256

Table 9-3. Reference Divide Factor

RDIV	RANGE=0	RANGE=1
4	16	512
5	32	1024
6	64	Reserved
7	128	Reserved

[1] Reset default

9.3.2 ICS Control Register 2 (ICSC2)

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	BDIV		RANGE	HGO	LP	EREFS	ERCLKEN	EREFSTEN
Reset:	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 9-4. ICS Control Register 2 (ICSC2)

Table 9-4. ICS Control Register 2 Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7:6 BDIV	**Bus Frequency Divider** — Selects the amount to divide down the clock source selected by the CLKS bits. This controls the bus frequency. 00 Encoding 0 — Divides selected clock by 1. 01 Encoding 1 — Divides selected clock by 2 (reset default). 10 Encoding 2 — Divides selected clock by 4. 11 Encoding 3 — Divides selected clock by 8.
5 RANGE	**Frequency Range Select** — Selects the frequency range for the external oscillator. 1 High frequency range selected for the external oscillator. 0 Low frequency range selected for the external oscillator.
4 HGO	**High Gain Oscillator Select** — The HGO bit controls the external oscillator mode of operation. 1 Configure external oscillator for high gain operation. 0 Configure external oscillator for low power operation.
3 LP	**Low Power Select** — The LP bit controls whether the FLL is disabled in FLL bypassed modes. 1 FLL is disabled in bypass modes unless BDM is active. 0 FLL is not disabled in bypass mode.
2 EREFS	**External Reference Select** — The EREFS bit selects the source for the external reference clock. 1 Oscillator requested. 0 External Clock Source requested.
1 ERCLKEN	**External Reference Enable** — The ERCLKEN bit enables the external reference clock for use as ICSERCLK. 1 ICSERCLK active. 0 ICSERCLK inactive.
0 EREFSTEN	**External Reference Stop Enable** — The EREFSTEN bit controls whether or not the external reference clock source (OSCOUT) remains enabled when the ICS enters stop mode. 1 External reference clock source stays enabled in stop if ERCLKEN is set before entering stop. 0 External reference clock source is disabled in stop.

9.3.3 ICS Trim Register (ICSTRM)

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	TRIM							

Reset: Note: TRIM is loaded during reset from a factory programmed location when not in BDM mode. If in a BDM mode, a default value of 0x80 is loaded.

Figure 9-5. ICS Trim Register (ICSTRM)

Table 9-5. ICS Trim Register Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7:0 TRIM	**ICS Trim Setting** — The TRIM bits control the internal reference clock frequency by controlling the internal reference clock period. The bits' effect are binary weighted (in other words, bit 1 adjusts twice as much as bit 0). Increasing the binary value in TRIM will increase the period, and decreasing the value will decrease the period. An additional fine trim bit is available in ICSSC as the FTRIM bit.

9.3.4 ICS Status and Control (ICSSC)

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	DRST		DMX32	IREFST	CLKST		OSCINIT	FTRIM[1]
W	DRS							
Reset:	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	

Figure 9-6. ICS Status and Control Register (ICSSC)

[1] FTRIM is loaded during reset from a factory programmed location when not in any BDM mode. If in a BDM mode, FTRIM gets loaded with a value of 1'b0.

Table 9-6. ICS Status and Control Register Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7-6 DRST DRS	**DCO Range Status** — The DRST read field indicates the current frequency range for the FLL output, DCOOUT. See Table 9-7. The DRST field does not update immediately after a write to the DRS field due to internal synchronization between clock domains. Writing the DRS bits to 2'b11 is ignored and the DRST bits remain with the current setting. **DCO Range Select** — The DRS field selects the frequency range for the FLL output, DCOOUT. Writes to the DRS field while the LP bit is set are ignored. 00 Low range. 01 Mid range. 10 High range. 11 Reserved.
5 DMX32	**DCO Maximum frequency with 32.768 kHz reference** — The DMX32 bit controls whether or not the DCO frequency range is narrowed to its maximum frequency with a 32.768 kHz reference. See Table 9-7. 0 DCO has default range of 25%. 1 DCO is fined tuned for maximum frequency with 32.768 kHz reference.

Table 9-6. ICS Status and Control Register Field Descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
4 IREFST	**Internal Reference Status** — The IREFST bit indicates the current source for the reference clock. The IREFST bit does not update immediately after a write to the IREFS bit due to internal synchronization between clock domains. 0 Source of reference clock is external clock. 1 Source of reference clock is internal clock.
3-2 CLKST	**Clock Mode Status** — The CLKST bits indicate the current clock mode. The CLKST bits don't update immediately after a write to the CLKS bits due to internal synchronization between clock domains. 00 Output of FLL is selected. 01 FLL Bypassed, Internal reference clock is selected. 10 FLL Bypassed, External reference clock is selected. 11 Reserved.
1 OSCINIT	**OSC Initialization** — If the external reference clock is selected by ERCLKEN or by the ICS being in FEE, FBE, or FBELP mode, and if EREFS is set, then this bit is set after the initialization cycles of the external oscillator clock have completed. This bit is only cleared when either ERCLKEN or EREFS are cleared.
0 FTRIM	**ICS Fine Trim** — The FTRIM bit controls the smallest adjustment of the internal reference clock frequency. Setting FTRIM will increase the period and clearing FTRIM will decrease the period by the smallest amount possible.

Table 9-7. DCO frequency range[1]

DRS	DMX32	Reference range	FLL factor	DCO range
00	**0**	31.25 - 39.0625 kHz	512	16 - 20 MHz
	1	32.768 kHz	608	19.92 MHz
01	**0**	31.25 - 39.0625 kHz	1024	32 - 40 MHz
	1	32.768 kHz	1216	39.85 MHz
10	**0**	31.25 - 39.0625 kHz	1536	48 - 60 MHz
	1	32.768 kHz	1824	59.77 MHz
11	Reserved			

[1] The resulting bus clock frequency should not exceed the maximum specified bus clock frequency of the device.

9.4 Functional Description

9.4.1 Operational Modes

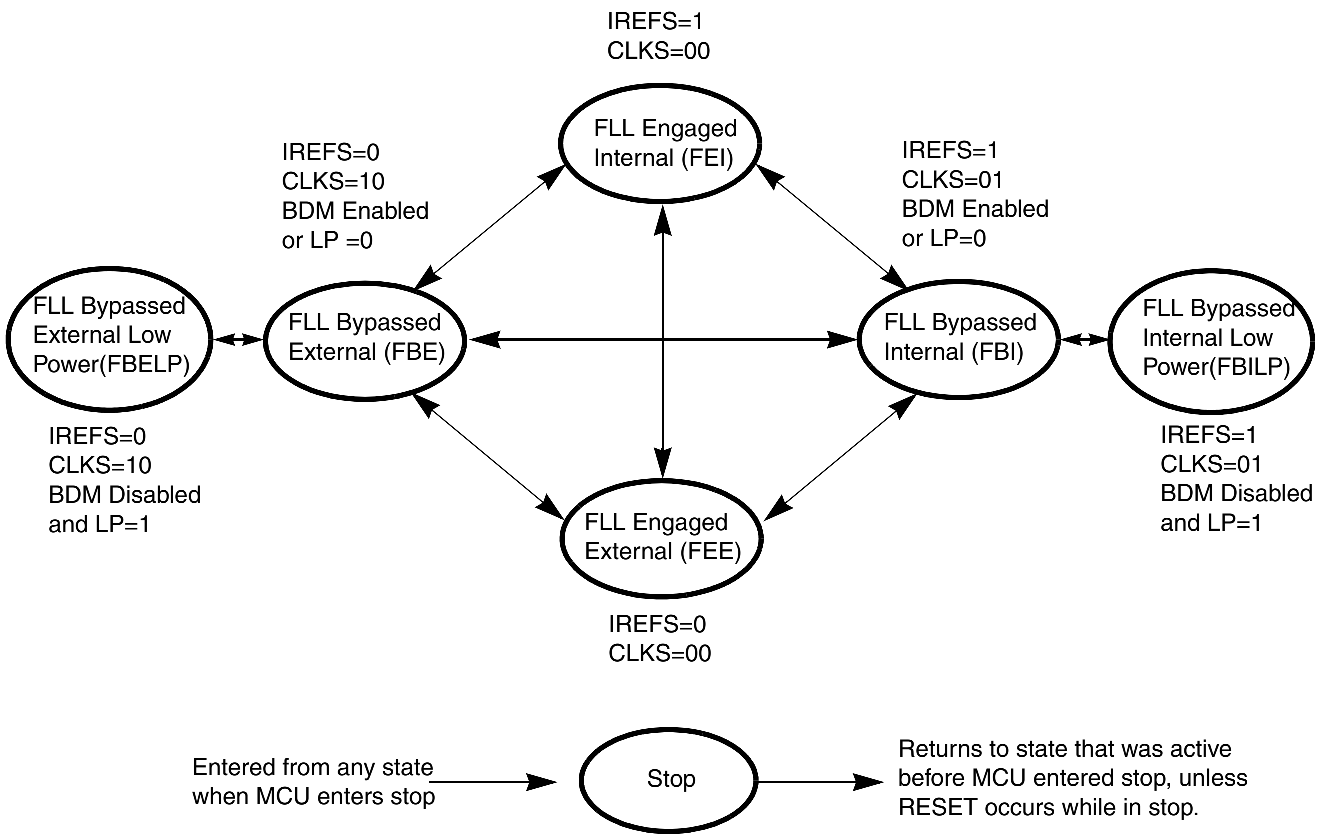


Figure 9-7. Clock Switching Modes

The seven states of the ICS are shown as a state diagram and are described below. The arrows indicate the allowed movements between the states.

9.4.1.1 FLL Engaged Internal (FEI)

FLL engaged internal (FEI) is the default mode of operation and is entered when all the following conditions occur:

- CLKS bits are written to 00.
- IREFS bit is written to 1.

In FLL engaged internal mode, the ICSOUT clock is derived from the FLL clock, which is controlled by the internal reference clock. The FLL loop locks the frequency to the FLL factor times the internal reference frequency. The ICSLCLK is available for BDC communications, and the internal reference clock is enabled.

9.4.1.2 FLL Engaged External (FEE)

The FLL engaged external (FEE) mode is entered when all the following conditions occur:

- CLKS bits are written to 00.
- IREFS bit is written to 0.
- RDIV bits are written to divide external reference clock to be within the range of 31.25 kHz to 39.0625 kHz.

In FLL engaged external mode, the ICSOUT clock is derived from the FLL clock which is controlled by the external reference clock source.The FLL loop locks the frequency to the FLL factor times the external reference frequency, as selected by the RDIV bits. The ICSLCLK is available for BDC communications, and the external reference clock is enabled.

9.4.1.3 FLL Bypassed Internal (FBI)

The FLL bypassed internal (FBI) mode is entered when all the following conditions occur:

- CLKS bits are written to 01.
- IREFS bit is written to 1.
- BDM mode is active or LP bit is written to 0.

In FLL bypassed internal mode, the ICSOUT clock is derived from the internal reference clock. The FLL clock is controlled by the internal reference clock, and the FLL loop locks the FLL frequency to the FLL factor times the internal reference frequency. The ICSLCLK will be available for BDC communications, and the internal reference clock is enabled.

9.4.1.4 FLL Bypassed Internal Low Power (FBILP)

The FLL bypassed internal low power (FBILP) mode is entered when all the following conditions occur:

- CLKS bits are written to 01.
- IREFS bit is written to 1.
- BDM mode is not active and LP bit is written to 1.

In FLL bypassed internal low power mode, the ICSOUT clock is derived from the internal reference clock and the FLL is disabled. The ICSLCLK will be not be available for BDC communications, and the internal reference clock is enabled.

9.4.1.5 FLL Bypassed External (FBE)

The FLL bypassed external (FBE) mode is entered when all the following conditions occur:

- CLKS bits are written to 10.
- IREFS bit is written to 0.
- RDIV bits are written to divide external reference clock to be within the range of 31.25 kHz to 39.0625 kHz.
- BDM mode is active or LP bit is written to 0.

In FLL bypassed external mode, the ICSOUT clock is derived from the external reference clock source. The FLL clock is controlled by the external reference clock, and the FLL loop locks the FLL frequency to the FLL factor times the external reference frequency, as selected by the RDIV bits, so that the ICSLCLK will be available for BDC communications, and the external reference clock is enabled.

9.4.1.6 FLL Bypassed External Low Power (FBELP)

The FLL bypassed external low power (FBELP) mode is entered when all the following conditions occur:

- CLKS bits are written to 10.
- IREFS bit is written to 0.
- BDM mode is not active and LP bit is written to 1.

In FLL bypassed external low power mode, the ICSOUT clock is derived from the external reference clock source and the FLL is disabled. The ICSLCLK will be not be available for BDC communications. The external reference clock source is enabled.

9.4.1.7 Stop

Stop mode is entered whenever the MCU enters a STOP state. In this mode, all ICS clock signals are static except in the following cases:

ICSIRCLK will be active in stop mode when all the following conditions occur:

- IRCLKEN bit is written to 1.
- IREFSTEN bit is written to 1.

OSCOUT will be active in stop mode when all the following conditions occur:

- ERCLKEN bit is written to 1.
- EREFSTEN bit is written to 1.

9.4.2 Mode Switching

The IREF bit can be changed at anytime, but the actual switch to the newly selected clock is shown by the IREFST bit. When switching between FLL engaged internal (FEI) and FLL engaged external (FEE) modes, the FLL begins locking again after the switch is completed.

The CLKS bits can also be changed at anytime, but the actual switch to the newly selected clock is shown by the CLKST bits. If the newly selected clock is not available, the previous clock remains selected.

The DRS bits can be changed at anytime except when LP bit is 1. If the DRS bits are changed while in FLL engaged internal (FEI) or FLL engaged external (FEE), the bus clock remains at the previous DCO range until the new DCO starts. When the new DCO starts the bus clock switches to it. After switching to the new DCO the FLL remains unlocked for several reference cycles. Once the selected DCO startup time is over, the FLL is locked. The completion of the switch is shown by the DRST bits.

9.4.3 Bus Frequency Divider

The BDIV bits can be changed at anytime and the actual switch to the new frequency occurs immediately.

9.4.4 Low Power Bit Usage

The low power bit (LP) is provided to allow the FLL to be disabled and thus conserve power when it is not being used. The DRS bits can not be written while LP bit is 1.

However, in some applications it may be desirable to allow the FLL to be enabled and to lock for maximum accuracy before switching to an FLL engaged mode. To do this, write the LP bit to 0.

9.4.5 DCO Maximum Frequency with 32.768 kHz Oscillator

The FLL has an option to change the clock multiplier for the selected DCO range such that it results in the maximum bus frequency with a common 32.768 kHz crystal reference clock.

9.4.6 Internal Reference Clock

When IRCLKEN is set the internal reference clock signal is presented as ICSIRCLK, which can be used as an additional clock source. To re-target the ICSIRCLK frequency, write a new value to the TRIM bits in the ICSTRM register to trim the period of the internal reference clock:

- Writing a larger value slows down the ICSIRCLK frequency.
- Writing a smaller value to the ICSTRM register speeds up the ICSIRCLK frequency.

The TRIM bits effect the ICSOUT frequency if the ICS is in FLL engaged internal (FEI), FLL bypassed internal (FBI), or FLL bypassed internal low power (FBILP) mode.

Until ICSIRCLK is trimmed, programming low reference divider (RDIV) factors may result in ICSOUT frequencies that exceed the maximum chip-level frequency and violate the chip-level clock timing specifications (see the Device Overview chapter).

If IREFSTEN is set and the IRCLKEN bit is written to 1, the internal reference clock keeps running during stop mode in order to provide a fast recovery upon exiting stop.

All MCU devices are factory programmed with a trim value in a reserved memory location. This value is uploaded to the ICSTRM register and ICS FTRIM register during any reset initialization. For finer precision, trim the internal oscillator in the application and set the FTRIM bit accordingly.

9.4.7 External Reference Clock

The ICS module supports an external reference clock with frequencies between 31.25 kHz to 40 MHz in all modes. When the ERCLKEN is set, the external reference clock signal is presented as ICSERCLK, which can be used as an additional clock source in run mode. When IREFS = 1, the external reference clock is not used by the FLL and will only be used as ICSERCLK. In these modes, the frequency can be equal to the maximum frequency the chip-level timing specifications support (see the Device Overview chapter).

If EREFSTEN is set and the ERCLKEN bit is written to 1, the external reference clock source (OSCOUT) keeps running during stop mode in order to provide a fast recovery upon exiting stop.

9.4.8 Fixed Frequency Clock

The ICS presents the divided FLL reference clock as ICSFFCLK for use as an additional clock source. ICSFFCLK frequency must be no more than 1/4 of the ICSOUT frequency to be valid.

9.4.9 Local Clock

The ICS presents the low range DCO output clock divided by two as ICSLCLK for use as a clock source for BDC communications. ICSLCLK is not available in FLL bypassed internal low power (FBILP) and FLL bypassed external low power (FBELP) modes.

Chapter 10
Serial Communications Interface (S08SCIV4)

10.1 Introduction

NOTE

The MC9S08SC4 device does not support stop1. Please disregard any references to stop1 in this chapter.

Figure 10-1 shows the MC9S08SC4 block diagram with the SCI module highlighted.

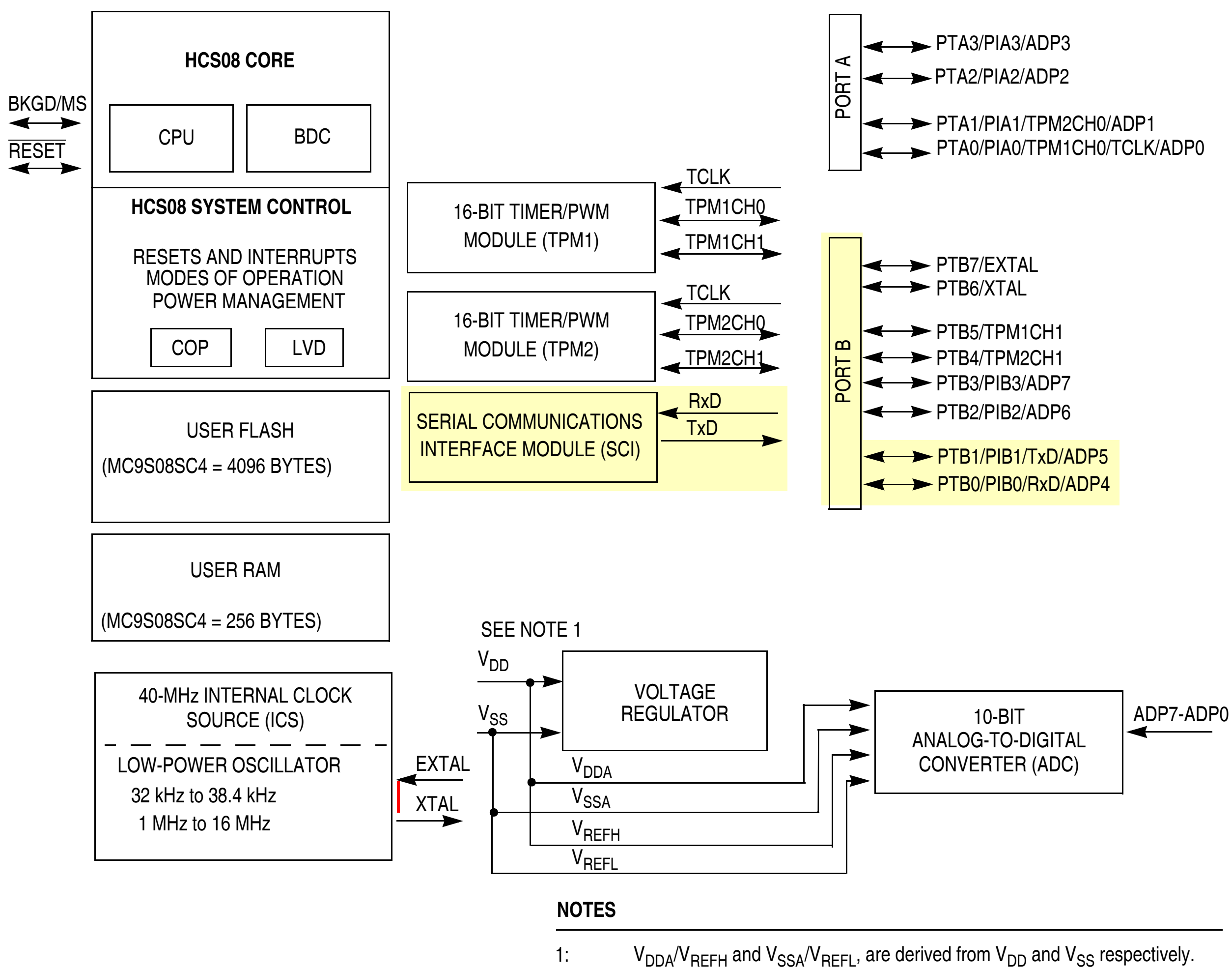


Figure 10-1. MC9S08SC4 Block Diagram with SCI Highlighted

10.1.1 Features

Features of SCI module include:

- Full-duplex, standard non-return-to-zero (NRZ) format
- LIN master extended break generation
- LIN slave extended break detection
- Wake-up on active edge
- Double-buffered transmitter and receiver with separate enables
- Programmable baud rates (13-bit modulo divider)
- Interrupt-driven or polled operation:
  - Transmit data register empty and transmission complete
  - Receive data register full
  - Receive overrun, parity error, framing error, and noise error
  - Idle receiver detect
  - Active edge on receive pin
  - Break detect supporting LIN
- Hardware parity generation and checking
- Programmable 8-bit or 9-bit character length
- Receiver wakeup by idle-line or address-mark
- Optional 13-bit break character generation / 11-bit break character detection
- Selectable transmitter output polarity

10.1.2 Modes of Operation

See Section 10.3, “Functional Description,” for details concerning SCI operation in these modes:

- 8- and 9-bit data modes
- Stop mode operation
- Loop mode
- Single-wire mode

10.1.3 Block Diagram

Figure 10-2 shows the transmitter portion of the SCI.

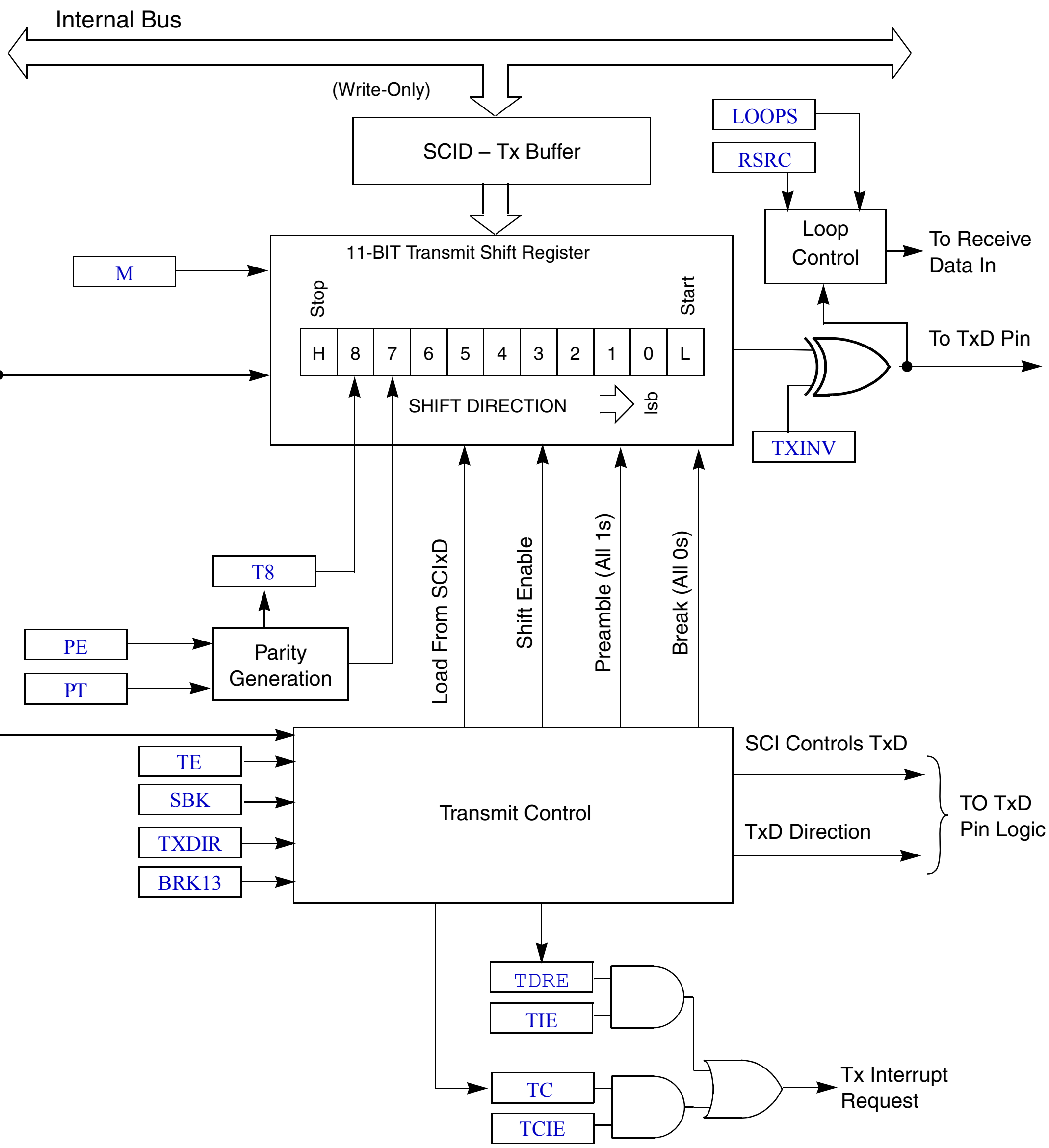


Figure 10-2. SCI Transmitter Block Diagram

Figure 10-3 shows the receiver portion of the SCI.

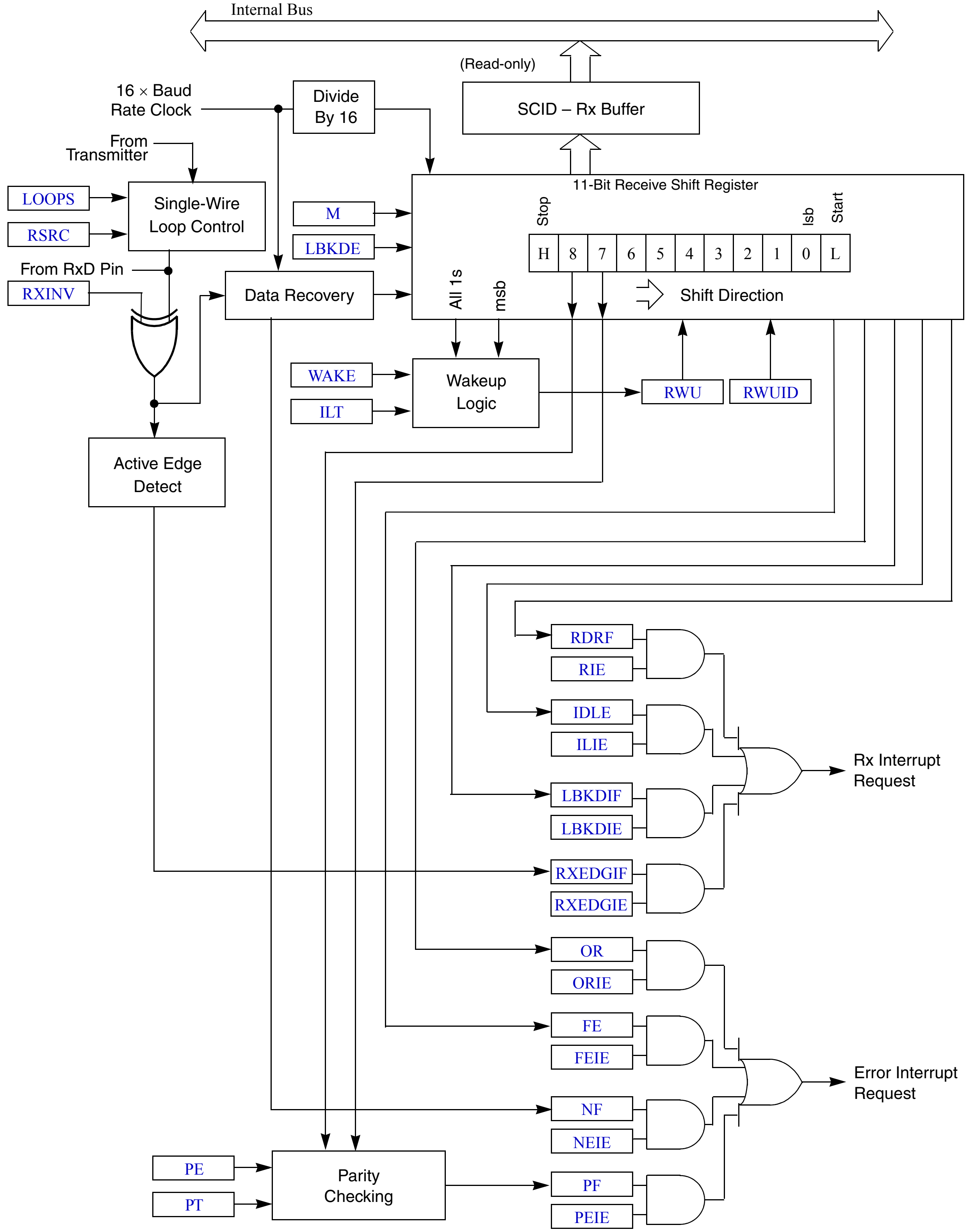


Figure 10-3. SCI Receiver Block Diagram

10.2 Register Definition

The SCI has eight 8-bit registers to control baud rate, select SCI options, report SCI status, and for transmit/receive data.

Refer to the direct-page register summary in Chapter 4, "Memory," or the absolute address assignments for all SCI registers. This section refers to registers and control bits only by their names. A Freescale-provided equate or header file is used to translate these names into the appropriate absolute addresses.

10.2.1 SCI Baud Rate Registers (SCIxBDH, SCIxBDL)

This pair of registers controls the prescale divisor for SCI baud rate generation. To update the 13-bit baud rate setting [SBR12:SBR0], first write to SCIxBDH to buffer the high half of the new value and then write to SCIxBDL. The working value in SCIxBDH does not change until SCIxBDL is written.

SCIxBDL is reset to a non-zero value, so after reset the baud rate generator remains disabled until the first time the receiver or transmitter is enabled (RE or TE bits in SCIxC2 are written to 1).

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	LBKDIE	RXEDGIE	0	SBR[12:8]				
W								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 10-4. SCI Baud Rate Register (SCIxBDH)

Table 10-1. SCIxBDH Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7 LBKDIE	LIN Break Detect Interrupt Enable (for LBKDIF) 0 Hardware interrupts from LBKDIF disabled (use polling). 1 Hardware interrupt requested when LBKDIF flag is 1.
6 RXEDGIE	RxD Input Active Edge Interrupt Enable (for RXEDGIF) 0 Hardware interrupts from RXEDGIF disabled (use polling). 1 Hardware interrupt requested when RXEDGIF flag is 1.
4–0 SBR[12:8]	Baud Rate Modulo Divisor. The 13 bits in SBR[12:0] are referred to collectively as BR, and they set the modulo divide rate for the SCI baud rate generator. When BR is cleared, the SCI baud rate generator is disabled to reduce supply current. When BR is 1 – 8191, the SCI baud rate equals SCI module clock/(16 $\times$ BR). See also BR bits in Table 10-2.

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	SBR[7:0]							
W								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0

Figure 10-5. SCI Baud Rate Register (SCIxBDL)

Table 10-2. SCIxBDL Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7–0 SBR[7:0]	Baud Rate Modulo Divisor. These 13 bits in SBR[12:0] are referred to collectively as BR, and they set the modulo divide rate for the SCI baud rate generator. When BR is cleared, the SCI baud rate generator is disabled to reduce supply current. When BR is 1 – 8191, the SCI baud rate equals SCI module clock/(16 × BR). See also BR bits in Table 10-1.

10.2.2 SCI Control Register 1 (SCIxC1)

This read/write register controls various optional features of the SCI system.

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	LOOPS	SCISWAI	RSRC	M	WAKE	ILT	PE	PT
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 10-6. SCI Control Register 1 (SCIxC1)

Table 10-3. SCIxC1 Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7 LOOPS	Loop Mode Select. Selects between loop back modes and normal 2-pin full-duplex modes. When LOOPS is set, the transmitter output is internally connected to the receiver input. 0 Normal operation — RxD and TxD use separate pins. 1 Loop mode or single-wire mode where transmitter outputs are internally connected to receiver input. (See RSRC bit.) RxD pin is not used by SCI.
6 SCISWAI	SCI Stops in Wait Mode 0 SCI clocks continue to run in wait mode so the SCI can be the source of an interrupt that wakes up the CPU. 1 SCI clocks freeze while CPU is in wait mode.
5 RSRC	Receiver Source Select. This bit has no meaning or effect unless the LOOPS bit is set to 1. When LOOPS is set, the receiver input is internally connected to the TxD pin and RSRC determines whether this connection is also connected to the transmitter output. 0 Provided LOOPS is set, RSRC is cleared, selects internal loop back mode and the SCI does not use the RxD pins. 1 Single-wire SCI mode where the TxD pin is connected to the transmitter output and receiver input.
4 M	9-Bit or 8-Bit Mode Select 0 Normal — start + 8 data bits (lsb first) + stop. 1 Receiver and transmitter use 9-bit data characters start + 8 data bits (lsb first) + 9th data bit + stop.
3 WAKE	Receiver Wakeup Method Select. Refer to Section 10.3.3.2, "Receiver Wakeup Operation" for more information. 0 Idle-line wakeup. 1 Address-mark wakeup.
2 ILT	Idle Line Type Select. Setting this bit to 1 ensures that the stop bit and logic 1 bits at the end of a character do not count toward the 10 or 11 bit times of logic high level needed by the idle line detection logic. Refer to Section 10.3.3.2.1, "Idle-Line Wakeup" for more information. 0 Idle character bit count starts after start bit. 1 Idle character bit count starts after stop bit.

Table 10-3. SCIxC1 Field Descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
1 PE	Parity Enable. Enables hardware parity generation and checking. When parity is enabled, the most significant bit (msb) of the data character (eighth or ninth data bit) is treated as the parity bit. 0 No hardware parity generation or checking. 1 Parity enabled.
0 PT	Parity Type. Provided parity is enabled (PE = 1), this bit selects even or odd parity. Odd parity means the total number of 1s in the data character, including the parity bit, is odd. Even parity means the total number of 1s in the data character, including the parity bit, is even. 0 Even parity. 1 Odd parity.

10.2.3 SCI Control Register 2 (SCIxC2)

This register can be read or written at any time.

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	TIE	TCIE	RIE	ILIE	TE	RE	RWU	SBK
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 10-7. SCI Control Register 2 (SCIxC2)

Table 10-4. SCIxC2 Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7 TIE	Transmit Interrupt Enable (for TDRE) 0 Hardware interrupts from TDRE disabled (use polling). 1 Hardware interrupt requested when TDRE flag is 1.
6 TCIE	Transmission Complete Interrupt Enable (for TC) 0 Hardware interrupts from TC disabled (use polling). 1 Hardware interrupt requested when TC flag is 1.
5 RIE	Receiver Interrupt Enable (for RDRF) 0 Hardware interrupts from RDRF disabled (use polling). 1 Hardware interrupt requested when RDRF flag is 1.
4 ILIE	Idle Line Interrupt Enable (for IDLE) 0 Hardware interrupts from IDLE disabled (use polling). 1 Hardware interrupt requested when IDLE flag is 1.

Table 10-4. SCIxC2 Field Descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
3 TE	Transmitter Enable 0 Transmitter off. 1 Transmitter on. TE must be 1 to use the SCI transmitter. When TE is set, the SCI forces the TxD pin to act as an output for the SCI system. When the SCI is configured for single-wire operation (LOOPS = RSRC = 1), TXDIR controls the direction of traffic on the single SCI communication line (TxD pin). TE can also queue an idle character by clearing TE then setting TE while a transmission is in progress. Refer to Section 10.3.2.1, “Send Break and Queued Idle” for more details. When TE is written to 0, the transmitter keeps control of the port TxD pin until any data, queued idle, or queued break character finishes transmitting before allowing the pin to revert to a general-purpose I/O pin.
2 RE	Receiver Enable. When the SCI receiver is off, the RxD pin reverts to being a general-purpose port I/O pin. If LOOPS is set the RxD pin reverts to being a general-purpose I/O pin even if RE is set. 0 Receiver off. 1 Receiver on.
1 RWU	Receiver Wakeup Control. This bit can be written to 1 to place the SCI receiver in a standby state where it waits for automatic hardware detection of a selected wakeup condition. The wakeup condition is an idle line between messages (WAKE = 0, idle-line wakeup) or a logic 1 in the most significant data bit in a character (WAKE = 1, address-mark wakeup). Application software sets RWU and (normally) a selected hardware condition automatically clears RWU. Refer to Section 10.3.3.2, “Receiver Wakeup Operation,” for more details. 0 Normal SCI receiver operation. 1 SCI receiver in standby waiting for wakeup condition.
0 SBK	Send Break. Writing a 1 and then a 0 to SBK queues a break character in the transmit data stream. Additional break characters of 10 or 11 (13 or 14 if BRK13 = 1) bit times of logic 0 are queued as long as SBK is set. Depending on the timing of the set and clear of SBK relative to the information currently being transmitted, a second break character may be queued before software clears SBK. Refer to Section 10.3.2.1, “Send Break and Queued Idle” for more details. 0 Normal transmitter operation. 1 Queue break character(s) to be sent.

10.2.4 SCI Status Register 1 (SCIxS1)

This register has eight read-only status flags. Writes have no effect. Special software sequences (which do not involve writing to this register) clear these status flags.

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	TDRE	TC	RDRF	IDLE	OR	NF	FE	PF
W								
Reset	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 10-8. SCI Status Register 1 (SCIxS1)

Table 10-5. SCIxS1 Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7 TDRE	Transmit Data Register Empty Flag. TDRE is set out of reset and when a transmit data value transfers from the transmit data buffer to the transmit shifter, leaving room for a new character in the buffer. To clear TDRE, read SCIxS1 with TDRE set and then write to the SCI data register (SCIxD). 0 Transmit data register (buffer) full. 1 Transmit data register (buffer) empty.
6 TC	Transmission Complete Flag. TC is set out of reset and when TDRE is set and no data, preamble, or break character is being transmitted. 0 Transmitter active (sending data, a preamble, or a break). 1 Transmitter idle (transmission activity complete). TC is cleared automatically by reading SCIxS1 with TC set and then doing one of the following: • Write to the SCI data register (SCIxD) to transmit new data • Queue a preamble by changing TE from 0 to 1 • Queue a break character by writing 1 to SBK in SCIxC2
5 RDRF	Receive Data Register Full Flag. RDRF becomes set when a character transfers from the receive shifter into the receive data register (SCIxD). To clear RDRF, read SCIxS1 with RDRF set and then read the SCI data register (SCIxD). 0 Receive data register empty. 1 Receive data register full.
4 IDLE	Idle Line Flag. IDLE is set when the SCI receive line becomes idle for a full character time after a period of activity. When ILT is cleared, the receiver starts counting idle bit times after the start bit. If the receive character is all 1s, these bit times and the stop bit time count toward the full character time of logic high (10 or 11 bit times depending on the M control bit) needed for the receiver to detect an idle line. When ILT is set, the receiver doesn't start counting idle bit times until after the stop bit. The stop bit and any logic high bit times at the end of the previous character do not count toward the full character time of logic high needed for the receiver to detect an idle line. To clear IDLE, read SCIxS1 with IDLE set and then read the SCI data register (SCIxD). After IDLE has been cleared, it cannot become set again until after a new character has been received and RDRF has been set. IDLE is set only once even if the receive line remains idle for an extended period. 0 No idle line detected. 1 Idle line was detected.
3 OR	Receiver Overrun Flag. OR is set when a new serial character is ready to be transferred to the receive data register (buffer), but the previously received character has not been read from SCIxD yet. In this case, the new character (and all associated error information) is lost because there is no room to move it into SCIxD. To clear OR, read SCIxS1 with OR set and then read the SCI data register (SCIxD). 0 No overrun. 1 Receive overrun (new SCI data lost).
2 NF	Noise Flag. The advanced sampling technique used in the receiver takes seven samples during the start bit and three samples in each data bit and the stop bit. If any of these samples disagrees with the rest of the samples within any bit time in the frame, the flag NF is set at the same time as RDRF is set for the character. To clear NF, read SCIxS1 and then read the SCI data register (SCIxD). 0 No noise detected. 1 Noise detected in the received character in SCIxD.

Table 10-5. SCIxS1 Field Descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
1 FE	Framing Error Flag. FE is set at the same time as RDRF when the receiver detects a logic 0 where the stop bit was expected. This suggests the receiver was not properly aligned to a character frame. To clear FE, read SCIxS1 with FE set and then read the SCI data register (SCIxD). 0 No framing error detected. This does not guarantee the framing is correct. 1 Framing error.
0 PF	Parity Error Flag. PF is set at the same time as RDRF when parity is enabled (PE = 1) and the parity bit in the received character does not agree with the expected parity value. To clear PF, read SCIxS1 and then read the SCI data register (SCIxD). 0 No parity error. 1 Parity error.

10.2.5 SCI Status Register 2 (SCIxS2)

This register contains one read-only status flag.

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	LBKDIF	RXEDGIF	0	RXINV	RWUID	BRK13	LBKDE	RAF
W								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 10-9. SCI Status Register 2 (SCIxS2)

Table 10-6. SCIxS2 Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7 LBKDIF	LIN Break Detect Interrupt Flag. LBKDIF is set when the LIN break detect circuitry is enabled and a LIN break character is detected. LBKDIF is cleared by writing a 1 to it. 0 No LIN break character has been detected. 1 LIN break character has been detected.
6 RXEDGIF	RxD Pin Active Edge Interrupt Flag. RXEDGIF is set when an active edge (falling if RXINV = 0, rising if RXINV=1) on the RxD pin occurs. RXEDGIF is cleared by writing a 1 to it. 0 No active edge on the receive pin has occurred. 1 An active edge on the receive pin has occurred.
4 RXINV[1]	Receive Data Inversion. Setting this bit reverses the polarity of the received data input. 0 Receive data not inverted 1 Receive data inverted
3 RWUID	Receive Wake Up Idle Detect. RWUID controls whether the idle character that wakes up the receiver sets the IDLE bit. 0 During receive standby state (RWU = 1), the IDLE bit does not get set upon detection of an idle character. 1 During receive standby state (RWU = 1), the IDLE bit gets set upon detection of an idle character.
2 BRK13	Break Character Generation Length. BRK13 selects a longer transmitted break character length. Detection of a framing error is not affected by the state of this bit. 0 Break character is transmitted with length of 10 bit times (11 if M = 1) 1 Break character is transmitted with length of 13 bit times (14 if M = 1)

Table 10-6. SCIxS2 Field Descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
1 LBKDE	LIN Break Detection Enable. LBKDE selects a longer break character detection length. While LBKDE is set, framing error (FE) and receive data register full (RDRF) flags are prevented from setting. 0 Break character is detected at length of 10 bit times (11 if M = 1). 1 Break character is detected at length of 11 bit times (12 if M = 1).
0 RAF	Receiver Active Flag. RAF is set when the SCI receiver detects the beginning of a valid start bit, and RAF is cleared automatically when the receiver detects an idle line. This status flag can be used to check whether an SCI character is being received before instructing the MCU to go to stop mode. 0 SCI receiver idle waiting for a start bit. 1 SCI receiver active (RxD input not idle).

[1] Setting RXINV inverts the RxD input for all cases: data bits, start and stop bits, break, and idle.

When using an internal oscillator in a LIN system, it is necessary to raise the break detection threshold one bit time. Under the worst case timing conditions allowed in LIN, it is possible that a 0x00 data character can appear to be 10.26 bit times long at a slave running 14% faster than the master. This would trigger normal break detection circuitry designed to detect a 10-bit break symbol. When the LBKDE bit is set, framing errors are inhibited and the break detection threshold changes from 10 bits to 11 bits, preventing false detection of a 0x00 data character as a LIN break symbol.

10.2.6 SCI Control Register 3 (SCIxC3)

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	R8	T8	TXDIR	TXINV	ORIE	NEIE	FEIE	PEIE
W								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 10-10. SCI Control Register 3 (SCIxC3)

Table 10-7. SCIxC3 Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7 R8	Ninth Data Bit for Receiver. When the SCI is configured for 9-bit data (M = 1), R8 can be thought of as a ninth receive data bit to the left of the msb of the buffered data in the SCIxD register. When reading 9-bit data, read R8 before reading SCIxD because reading SCIxD completes automatic flag clearing sequences that could allow R8 and SCIxD to be overwritten with new data.
6 T8	Ninth Data Bit for Transmitter. When the SCI is configured for 9-bit data (M = 1), T8 may be thought of as a ninth transmit data bit to the left of the msb of the data in the SCIxD register. When writing 9-bit data, the entire 9-bit value is transferred to the SCI shift register after SCIxD is written so T8 should be written (if it needs to change from its previous value) before SCIxD is written. If T8 does not need to change in the new value (such as when it is used to generate mark or space parity), it need not be written each time SCIxD is written.
5 TXDIR	TxD Pin Direction in Single-Wire Mode. When the SCI is configured for single-wire half-duplex operation (LOOPS = RSRC = 1), this bit determines the direction of data at the TxD pin. 0 TxD pin is an input in single-wire mode. 1 TxD pin is an output in single-wire mode.

Table 10-7. SCIxC3 Field Descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
4 TXINV[1]	Transmit Data Inversion. Setting this bit reverses the polarity of the transmitted data output. 0 Transmit data not inverted 1 Transmit data inverted
3 ORIE	Overrun Interrupt Enable. This bit enables the overrun flag (OR) to generate hardware interrupt requests. 0 OR interrupts disabled (use polling). 1 Hardware interrupt requested when OR is set.
2 NEIE	Noise Error Interrupt Enable. This bit enables the noise flag (NF) to generate hardware interrupt requests. 0 NF interrupts disabled (use polling). 1 Hardware interrupt requested when NF is set.
1 FEIE	Framing Error Interrupt Enable. This bit enables the framing error flag (FE) to generate hardware interrupt requests. 0 FE interrupts disabled (use polling). 1 Hardware interrupt requested when FE is set.
0 PEIE	Parity Error Interrupt Enable. This bit enables the parity error flag (PF) to generate hardware interrupt requests. 0 PF interrupts disabled (use polling). 1 Hardware interrupt requested when PF is set.

[1] Setting TXINV inverts the TxD output for all cases: data bits, start and stop bits, break, and idle.

10.2.7 SCI Data Register (SCIxD)

This register is actually two separate registers. Reads return the contents of the read-only receive data buffer and writes go to the write-only transmit data buffer. Reads and writes of this register are also involved in the automatic flag clearing mechanisms for the SCI status flags.

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	R7	R6	R5	R4	R3	R2	R1	R0
W	T7	T6	T5	T4	T3	T2	T1	T0
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 10-11. SCI Data Register (SCIxD)

10.3 Functional Description

The SCI allows full-duplex, asynchronous, NRZ serial communication among the MCU and remote devices, including other MCUs. The SCI comprises a baud rate generator, transmitter, and receiver block. The transmitter and receiver operate independently, although they use the same baud rate generator. During normal operation, the MCU monitors the status of the SCI, writes the data to be transmitted, and processes received data. The following describes each of the blocks of the SCI.

10.3.1 Baud Rate Generation

As shown in Figure 10-12, the clock source for the SCI baud rate generator is the SCI module clock.

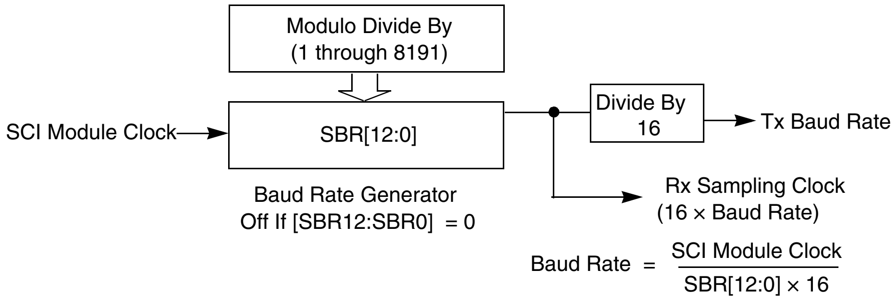


Figure 10-12. SCI Baud Rate Generation

SCI communications require the transmitter and receiver (which typically derive baud rates from independent clock sources) to use the same baud rate. Allowed tolerance on this baud frequency depends on the details of how the receiver synchronizes to the leading edge of the start bit and how bit sampling is performed.

The MCU resynchronizes to bit boundaries on every high-to-low transition. In the worst case, there are no such transitions in the full 10- or 11-bit time character frame so any mismatch in baud rate is accumulated for the whole character time. For a Freescale Semiconductor SCI system whose bus frequency is driven by a crystal, the allowed baud rate mismatch is about ±4.5 percent for 8-bit data format and about ±4 percent for 9-bit data format. Although baud rate modulo divider settings do not always produce baud rates that exactly match standard rates, it is normally possible to get within a few percent, which is acceptable for reliable communications.

10.3.2 Transmitter Functional Description

This section describes the overall block diagram for the SCI transmitter, as well as specialized functions for sending break and idle characters. The transmitter block diagram is shown in Figure 10-2.

The transmitter output (TxD) idle state defaults to logic high (TXINV is cleared following reset). The transmitter output is inverted by setting TXINV. The transmitter is enabled by setting the TE bit in SCIxC2. This queues a preamble character that is one full character frame of the idle state. The transmitter then remains idle until data is available in the transmit data buffer. Programs store data into the transmit data buffer by writing to the SCI data register (SCIxD).

The central element of the SCI transmitter is the transmit shift register that is 10 or 11 bits long depending on the setting in the M control bit. For the remainder of this section, assume M is cleared, selecting the normal 8-bit data mode. In 8-bit data mode, the shift register holds a start bit, eight data bits, and a stop bit. When the transmit shift register is available for a new SCI character, the value waiting in the transmit data register is transferred to the shift register (synchronized with the baud rate clock) and the transmit data register empty (TDRE) status flag is set to indicate another character may be written to the transmit data buffer at SCIxD.

If no new character is waiting in the transmit data buffer after a stop bit is shifted out the TxD pin, the transmitter sets the transmit complete flag and enters an idle mode, with TxD high, waiting for more characters to transmit.

Writing 0 to TE does not immediately release the pin to be a general-purpose I/O pin. Any transmit activity in progress must first be completed. This includes data characters in progress, queued idle characters, and queued break characters.

10.3.2.1 Send Break and Queued Idle

The SBK control bit in SCIxC2 sends break characters originally used to gain the attention of old teletype receivers. Break characters are a full character time of logic 0 (10 bit times including the start and stop bits). A longer break of 13 bit times can be enabled by setting BRK13. Normally, a program would wait for TDRE to become set to indicate the last character of a message has moved to the transmit shifter, then write 1 and then write 0 to the SBK bit. This action queues a break character to be sent as soon as the shifter is available. If SBK remains 1 when the queued break moves into the shifter (synchronized to the baud rate clock), an additional break character is queued. If the receiving device is another Freescale Semiconductor SCI, the break characters are received as 0s in all eight data bits and a framing error (FE = 1) occurs.

When idle-line wakeup is used, a full character time of idle (logic 1) is needed between messages to wake up any sleeping receivers. Normally, a program would wait for TDRE to become set to indicate the last character of a message has moved to the transmit shifter, then write 0 and then write 1 to the TE bit. This action queues an idle character to be sent as soon as the shifter is available. As long as the character in the shifter does not finish while TE is cleared, the SCI transmitter never actually releases control of the TxD pin. If there is a possibility of the shifter finishing while TE is cleard, set the general-purpose I/O controls so the pin shared with TxD is an output driving a logic 1. This ensures that the TxD line looks like a normal idle line even if the SCI loses control of the port pin between writing 0 and then 1 to TE.

The length of the break character is affected by the BRK13 and M bits as shown below.

Table 10-8. Break Character Length

BRK13	M	Break Character Length
0	0	10 bit times
0	1	11 bit times
1	0	13 bit times
1	1	14 bit times

10.3.3 Receiver Functional Description

In this section, the receiver block diagram (Figure 10-3) is a guide for the overall receiver functional description. Next, the data sampling technique used to reconstruct receiver data is described in more detail. Finally, two variations of the receiver wakeup function are explained.

The receiver input is inverted by setting RXINV. The receiver is enabled by setting the RE bit in SCIxC2. Character frames consist of a start bit of logic 0, eight (or nine) data bits (lsb first), and a stop bit of logic 1. For information about 9-bit data mode, refer to Section •, “8- and 9-bit data modes”. For the remainder of this discussion, assume the SCI is configured for normal 8-bit data mode.

After receiving the stop bit into the receive shifter, and provided the receive data register is not already full, the data character is transferred to the receive data register and the receive data register full (RDRF) status flag is set. If RDRF was already set indicating the receive data register (buffer) was already full, the overrun (OR) status flag is set and the new data is lost. Because the SCI receiver is double-buffered, the program has one full character time after RDRF is set before the data in the receive data buffer must be read to avoid a receiver overrun.

When a program detects that the receive data register is full (RDRF = 1), it gets the data from the receive data register by reading SCIxD. The RDRF flag is cleared automatically by a two-step sequence normally satisfied in the course of the user's program that manages receive data. Refer to Section 10.3.4, "Interrupts and Status Flags," for more details about flag clearing.

10.3.3.1 Data Sampling Technique

The SCI receiver uses a 16× baud rate clock for sampling. The receiver starts by taking logic level samples at 16 times the baud rate to search for a falling edge on the RxD serial data input pin. A falling edge is defined as a logic 0 sample after three consecutive logic 1 samples. The 16× baud rate clock divides the bit time into 16 segments labeled RT1 through RT16. When a falling edge is located, three more samples are taken at RT3, RT5, and RT7 to make sure this was a real start bit and not merely noise. If at least two of these three samples are 0, the receiver assumes it is synchronized to a receive character.

The receiver then samples each bit time, including the start and stop bits, at RT8, RT9, and RT10 to determine the logic level for that bit. The logic level is interpreted to be that of the majority of the samples taken during the bit time. In the case of the start bit, the bit is assumed to be 0 if at least two of the samples at RT3, RT5, and RT7 are 0 even if one or all of the samples taken at RT8, RT9, and RT10 are 1s. If any sample in any bit time (including the start and stop bits) in a character frame fails to agree with the logic level for that bit, the noise flag (NF) is set when the received character is transferred to the receive data buffer.

The falling edge detection logic continuously looks for falling edges. If an edge is detected, the sample clock is resynchronized to bit times. This improves the reliability of the receiver in the presence of noise or mismatched baud rates. It does not improve worst case analysis because some characters do not have any extra falling edges anywhere in the character frame.

In the case of a framing error, provided the received character was not a break character, the sampling logic that searches for a falling edge is filled with three logic 1 samples so that a new start bit can be detected almost immediately.

In the case of a framing error, the receiver is inhibited from receiving any new characters until the framing error flag is cleared. The receive shift register continues to function, but a complete character cannot transfer to the receive data buffer if FE remains set.

10.3.3.2 Receiver Wakeup Operation

Receiver wakeup is a hardware mechanism that allows an SCI receiver to ignore the characters in a message intended for a different SCI receiver. In such a system, all receivers evaluate the first character(s) of each message, and as soon as they determine the message is intended for a different receiver, they write logic 1 to the receiver wake up (RWU) control bit in SCIxC2. When RWU bit is set, the status flags associated with the receiver (with the exception of the idle bit, IDLE, when RWUID bit is set) are inhibited from setting, thus eliminating the software overhead for handling the unimportant message characters. At the end of a message, or at the beginning of the next message, all receivers automatically force RWU to 0 so all receivers wake up in time to look at the first character(s) of the next message.

10.3.3.2.1 Idle-Line Wakeup

When wake is cleared, the receiver is configured for idle-line wakeup. In this mode, RWU is cleared automatically when the receiver detects a full character time of the idle-line level. The M control bit selects 8-bit or 9-bit data mode that determines how many bit times of idle are needed to constitute a full character time (10 or 11 bit times because of the start and stop bits).

When RWU is one and RWUID is zero, the idle condition that wakes up the receiver does not set the IDLE flag. The receiver wakes up and waits for the first data character of the next message that sets the RDRF flag and generates an interrupt if enabled. When RWUID is one, any idle condition sets the IDLE flag and generates an interrupt if enabled, regardless of whether RWU is zero or one.

The idle-line type (ILT) control bit selects one of two ways to detect an idle line. When ILT is cleared, the idle bit counter starts after the start bit so the stop bit and any logic 1s at the end of a character count toward the full character time of idle. When ILT is set, the idle bit counter does not start until after a stop bit time, so the idle detection is not affected by the data in the last character of the previous message.

10.3.3.2.2 Address-Mark Wakeup

When wake is set, the receiver is configured for address-mark wakeup. In this mode, RWU is cleared automatically when the receiver detects a logic 1 in the most significant bit of a received character (eighth bit when M is cleared and ninth bit when M is set).

Address-mark wakeup allows messages to contain idle characters, but requires the msb be reserved for use in address frames. The logic 1 msb of an address frame clears the RWU bit before the stop bit is received and sets the RDRF flag. In this case, the character with the msb set is received even though the receiver was sleeping during most of this character time.

10.3.4 Interrupts and Status Flags

The SCI system has three separate interrupt vectors to reduce the amount of software needed to isolate the cause of the interrupt. One interrupt vector is associated with the transmitter for TDRE and TC events. Another interrupt vector is associated with the receiver for RDRF, IDLE, RXEDGIF, and LBKDIF events. A third vector is used for OR, NF, FE, and PF error conditions. Each of these ten interrupt sources can be separately masked by local interrupt enable masks. The flags can be polled by software when the local masks are cleared to disable generation of hardware interrupt requests.

The SCI transmitter has two status flags that can optionally generate hardware interrupt requests. Transmit data register empty (TDRE) indicates when there is room in the transmit data buffer to write another transmit character to SCIxD. If the transmit interrupt enable (TIE) bit is set, a hardware interrupt is requested when TDRE is set. Transmit complete (TC) indicates that the transmitter is finished transmitting all data, preamble, and break characters and is idle with TxD at the inactive level. This flag is often used in systems with modems to determine when it is safe to turn off the modem. If the transmit complete interrupt enable (TCIE) bit is set, a hardware interrupt is requested when TC is set. Instead of hardware interrupts, software polling may be used to monitor the TDRE and TC status flags if the corresponding TIE or TCIE local interrupt masks are cleared.

When a program detects that the receive data register is full (RDRF = 1), it gets the data from the receive data register by reading SCIxD. The RDRF flag is cleared by reading SCIxS1 while RDRF is set and then reading SCIxD.

When polling is used, this sequence is naturally satisfied in the normal course of the user program. If hardware interrupts are used, SCIxS1 must be read in the interrupt service routine (ISR). Normally, this is done in the ISR anyway to check for receive errors, so the sequence is automatically satisfied.

The IDLE status flag includes logic that prevents it from getting set repeatedly when the RxD line remains idle for an extended period of time. IDLE is cleared by reading SCIxS1 while IDLE is set and then reading SCIxD. After IDLE has been cleared, it cannot become set again until the receiver has received at least one new character and has set RDRF.

If the associated error was detected in the received character that caused RDRF to be set, the error flags — noise flag (NF), framing error (FE), and parity error flag (PF) — are set at the same time as RDRF. These flags are not set in overrun cases.

If RDRF was already set when a new character is ready to be transferred from the receive shifter to the receive data buffer, the overrun (OR) flag is set instead of the data along with any associated NF, FE, or PF condition is lost.

At any time, an active edge on the RxD serial data input pin causes the RXEDGIF flag to set. The RXEDGIF flag is cleared by writing a 1 to it. This function does depend on the receiver being enabled (RE = 1).

10.3.5 Additional SCI Functions

The following sections describe additional SCI functions.

10.3.5.1 8- and 9-Bit Data Modes

The SCI system (transmitter and receiver) can be configured to operate in 9-bit data mode by setting the M control bit in SCIxC1. In 9-bit mode, there is a ninth data bit to the left of the msb of the SCI data register. For the transmit data buffer, this bit is stored in T8 in SCIxC3. For the receiver, the ninth bit is held in R8 in SCIxC3.

For coherent writes to the transmit data buffer, write to the T8 bit before writing to SCIxD.

If the bit value to be transmitted as the ninth bit of a new character is the same as for the previous character, it is not necessary to write to T8 again. When data is transferred from the transmit data buffer to the transmit shifter, the value in T8 is copied at the same time data is transferred from SCIxD to the shifter.

The 9-bit data mode is typically used with parity to allow eight bits of data plus the parity in the ninth bit, or it is used with address-mark wakeup so the ninth data bit can serve as the wakeup bit. In custom protocols, the ninth bit can also serve as a software-controlled marker.

10.3.5.2 Stop Mode Operation

During all stop modes, clocks to the SCI module are halted.

In stop1 and stop2 modes, all SCI register data is lost and must be re-initialized upon recovery from these two stop modes. No SCI module registers are affected in stop3 mode.

The receive input active edge detect circuit remains active in stop3 mode, but not in stop2. An active edge on the receive input brings the CPU out of stop3 mode if the interrupt is not masked (RXEDGIE = 1).

Because the clocks are halted, the SCI module resumes operation upon exit from stop (only in stop3 mode). Software should ensure stop mode is not entered while there is a character being transmitted out of or received into the SCI module.

10.3.5.3 Loop Mode

When LOOPS is set, the RSRC bit in the same register chooses between loop mode (RSRC = 0) or single-wire mode (RSRC = 1). Loop mode is sometimes used to check software, independent of connections in the external system, to help isolate system problems. In this mode, the transmitter output is internally connected to the receiver input and the RxD pin is not used by the SCI, so it reverts to a general-purpose port I/O pin.

10.3.5.4 Single-Wire Operation

When LOOPS is set, the RSRC bit in the same register chooses between loop mode (RSRC = 0) or single-wire mode (RSRC = 1). Single-wire mode implements a half-duplex serial connection. The receiver is internally connected to the transmitter output and to the TxD pin. The RxD pin is not used and reverts to a general-purpose port I/O pin.

In single-wire mode, the TXDIR bit in SCIxC3 controls the direction of serial data on the TxD pin. When TXDIR is cleared, the TxD pin is an input to the SCI receiver and the transmitter is temporarily disconnected from the TxD pin so an external device can send serial data to the receiver. When TXDIR is set, the TxD pin is an output driven by the transmitter. In single-wire mode, the internal loop back connection from the transmitter to the receiver causes the receiver to receive characters that are sent out by the transmitter.

Chapter 11
Timer Pulse-Width Modulator (S08TPMV3)

11.1 Introduction

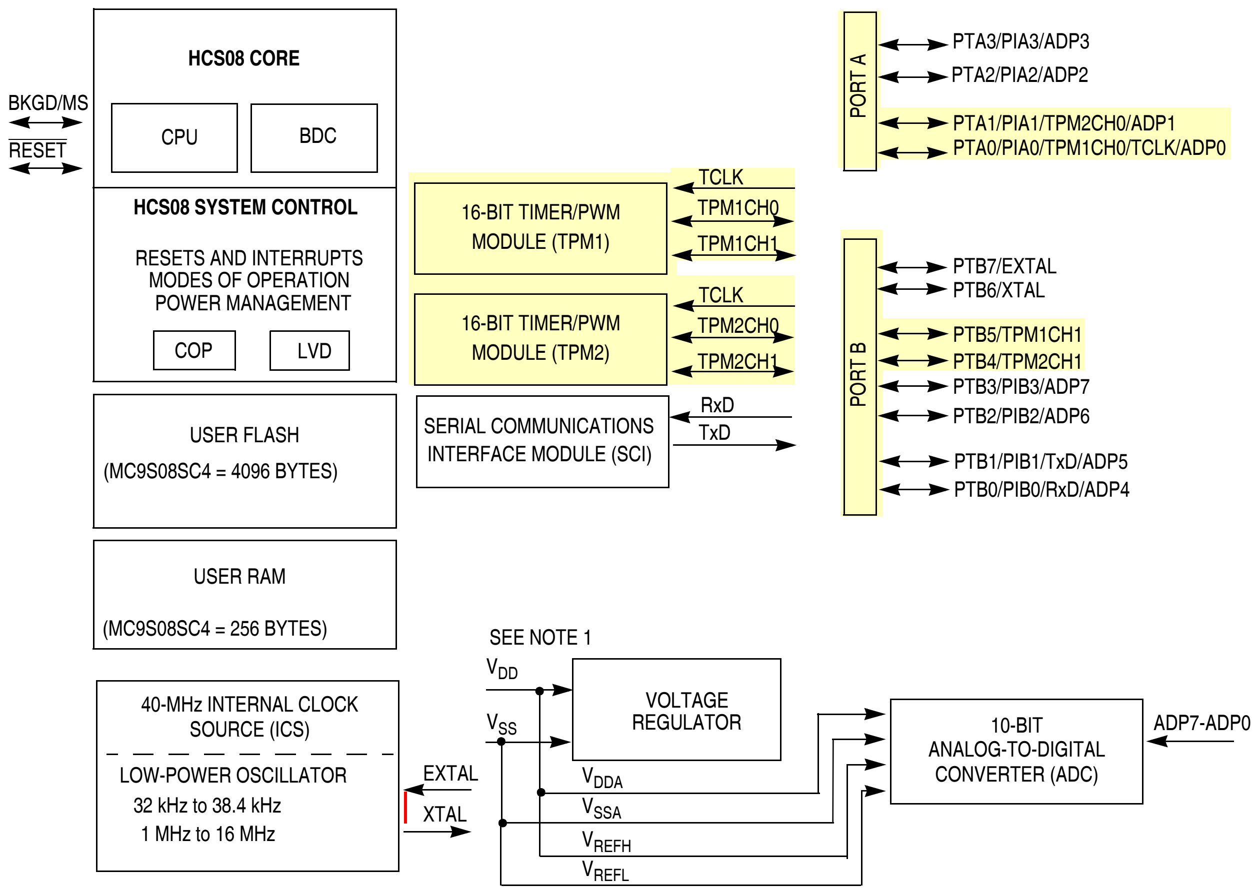
The TPM uses one input/output (I/O) pin per channel, TPMxCHn where x is the TPM number (for example, 1 or 2) and n is the channel number (for example, 0–1). The TPM shares its I/O pins with general-purpose I/O port pins (refer to Chapter 2, "Pins and Connections" for more information).

The MC9S08SC4 MCU has two TPM modules with 2 channels available on package pins.

11.1.1 TPM Configuration Information

The external clock for the TPM modules, TPMCLK, is selected by setting CLKS[B:A] = 1:1 in TPMxSC, which selects the TCLK pin input. The TCLK input on PTA0 can be enabled as an external clock input to both TPM modules simultaneously. When TCLK is enabled, the TPM1CH0 function in the same pin is disabled to avoid conflicts.

Figure 11-1 shows the MC9S08SC4 block diagram with the TPM modules highlighted.



NOTES

1: V_{DDA}/V_{REFH} and V_{SSA}/V_{REFL}, are derived from V_{DD} and V_{SS} respectively.

Figure 11-1. MC9S08SC4 Block Diagram with TPM Modules Highlighted

11.1.2 Features

The TPM includes these distinctive features:

- One to eight channels:
  - Each channel is input capture, output compare, or edge-aligned PWM
  - Rising-edge, falling-edge, or any-edge input capture trigger
  - Set, clear, or toggle output compare action
  - Selectable polarity on PWM outputs
- Module is configured for buffered, center-aligned pulse-width-modulation (CPWM) on all channels
- Timer clock source selectable as bus clock, fixed frequency clock, or an external clock
  - Prescale taps for divide-by 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64, or 128 used for any clock input selection
  - Fixed frequency clock is an additional clock input to allow the selection of an on chip clock source other than bus clock
  - Selecting external clock connects TPM clock to a chip level input pin therefore allowing to synchronize the TPM counter with an off chip clock source
- 16-bit free-running or modulus count with up/down selection
- One interrupt per channel and one interrupt for TPM counter overflow

11.1.3 Modes of Operation

In general, TPM channels are independently configured to operate in input capture, output compare, or edge-aligned PWM modes. A control bit allows the whole TPM (all channels) to switch to center-aligned PWM mode. When center-aligned PWM mode is selected, input capture, output compare, and edge-aligned PWM functions are not available on any channels of this TPM module.

When the MCU is in active BDM background or BDM foreground mode, the TPM temporarily suspends all counting until the MCU returns to normal user operating mode. During stop mode, all TPM input clocks are stopped, so the TPM is effectively disabled until clocks resume. During wait mode, the TPM continues to operate normally. If the TPM does not need to produce a real time reference or provide the interrupt sources needed to wake the MCU from wait mode, the power can then be saved by disabling TPM functions before entering wait mode.

- Input capture mode

  When a selected edge event occurs on the associated MCU pin, the current value of the 16-bit timer counter is captured into the channel value register and an interrupt flag bit is set. Rising edges, falling edges, any edge, or no edge (disable channel) are selected as the active edge that triggers the input capture.
- Output compare mode

  When the value in the timer counter register matches the channel value register, an interrupt flag bit is set, and a selected output action is forced on the associated MCU pin. The output compare action is selected to force the pin to zero, force the pin to one, toggle the pin, or ignore the pin (used for software timing functions).
- Edge-aligned PWM mode

The value of a 16-bit modulo register plus 1 sets the period of the PWM output signal. The channel value register sets the duty cycle of the PWM output signal. You can also choose the polarity of the PWM output signal. Interrupts are available at the end of the period and at the duty-cycle transition point. This type of PWM signal is called edge-aligned because the leading edges of all PWM signals are aligned with the beginning of the period that is same for all channels within a TPM.

- Center-aligned PWM mode

  Twice the value of a 16-bit modulo register sets the period of the PWM output, and the channel-value register sets the half-duty-cycle duration. The timer counter counts up until it reaches the modulo value and then counts down until it reaches zero. As the count matches the channel value register while counting down, the PWM output becomes active. When the count matches the channel value register while counting up, the PWM output becomes inactive. This type of PWM signal is called center-aligned because the centers of the active duty cycle periods for all channels are aligned with a count value of zero. This type of PWM is required for types of motors used in small appliances.

This is a high-level description only. Detailed descriptions of operating modes are in later sections.

11.1.4 Block Diagram

The TPM uses one input/output (I/O) pin per channel, TPMxCHn (timer channel n) where n is the channel number (1–8). The TPM shares its I/O pins with general purpose I/O port pins (refer to I/O pin descriptions in full-chip specification for the specific chip implementation).

Figure 11-2 shows the TPM structure. The central component of the TPM is the 16-bit counter that can operate as a free-running counter or a modulo up/down counter. The TPM counter (when operating in normal up-counting mode) provides the timing reference for the input capture, output compare, and edge-aligned PWM functions. The timer counter modulo registers, TPMxMODH:TPMxMODL, control the modulo value of the counter (the values 0x0000 or 0xFFFF effectively make the counter free running). Software can read the counter value at any time without affecting the counting sequence. Any write to either half of the TPMxCNT counter resets the counter, regardless of the data value written.

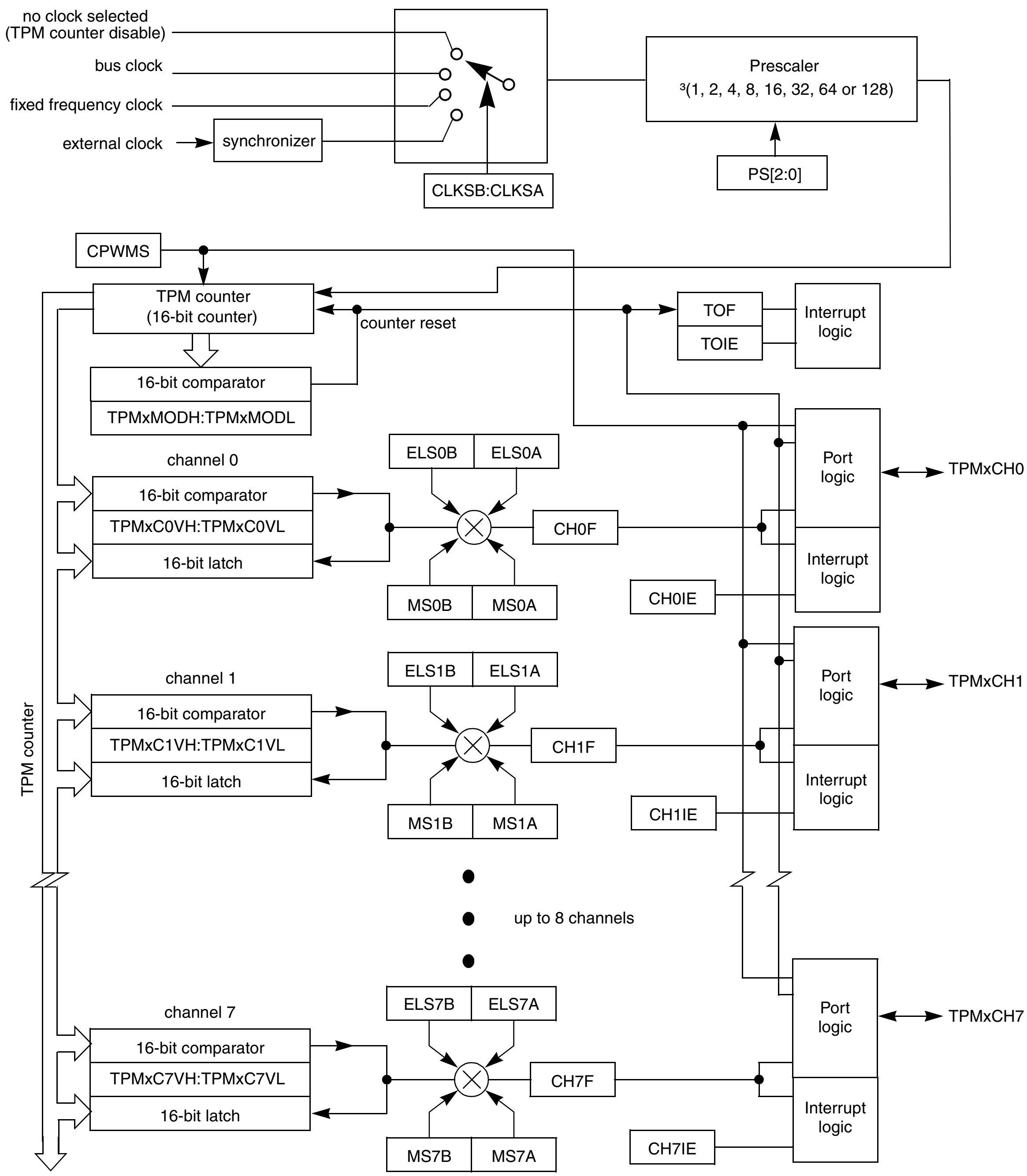


Figure 11-2. TPM Block Diagram

The TPM channels are programmable independently as input capture, output compare, or edge-aligned PWM channels. Alternately, the TPM can be configured to produce CPWM outputs on all channels. When the TPM is configured for CPWMs (the counter operates as an up/down counter) input capture, output compare, and EPWM functions are not practical.

11.2 Signal Description

Table 11-1 shows the user-accessible signals for the TPM. The number of channels are varied from one to eight. When an external clock is included, it can be shared with the same pin as any TPM channel; however, it could be connected to a separate input pin. Refer to the I/O pin descriptions in full-chip specification for the specific chip implementation.

Table 11-1. Signal Properties

Name	Function
EXTCLK[1]	External clock source that is selected to drive the TPM counter.
TPMxCHn[2]	I/O pin associated with TPM channel n.

1 The external clock pin can be shared with any channel pin. However, depending upon full-chip implementation, this signal could be connected to a separate external pin.

2 n = channel number (1–8)

11.2.1 Detailed Signal Descriptions

11.2.1.1 EXTCLK — External Clock Source

The external clock signal can share the same pin as a channel pin, however the channel pin can not be used for channel I/O function when external clock is selected. If this pin is used as an external clock (CLKSB:CLKSA = 1:1), the channel can still be configured to output compare mode therefore allowing its use as a timer (ELSnB:ELSnA = 0:0).

For proper TPM operation, the external clock frequency must not exceed one-fourth of the bus clock frequency.

11.2.1.2 TPMxCHn — TPM Channel n I/O Pins

The TPM channel does not control the I/O pin when ELSnB:ELSnA or CLKSB:CLKSA are cleared so it normally reverts to general purpose I/O control. When CPWMS is set and ELSnB:ELSnA are not cleared, all TPM channels are configured for center-aligned PWM and the TPMxCHn pins are all controlled by TPM. When CPWMS is cleared, the MSnB:MSnA control bits determine whether the channel is configured for input capture, output compare, or edge-aligned PWM.

When a channel is configured for input capture (CPWMS = 0, MSnB:MSnA = 0:0, and ELSnB:ELSnA ≠ 0:0), the TPMxCHn pin is forced to act as an edge-sensitive input to the TPM. ELSnB:ELSnA control bits determine what polarity edge or edges trigger input capture events. The channel input signal is synchronized on the bus clock. This implies the minimum pulse width—that can be reliably detected—on an input capture pin is four bus clock periods (with ideal clock pulses as near as two bus clocks can be detected).

When a channel is configured for output compare (CPWMS = 0, MSnB:MSnA = 0:1, and ELSnB:ELSnA ≠ 0:0), the TPMxCHn pin is an output controlled by the TPM. The ELSnB:ELSnA bits determine whether the TPMxCHn pin is toggled, cleared, or set each time the 16-bit channel value register matches the TPM counter.

When the output compare toggle mode is initially selected, the previous value on the pin is driven out until the next output compare event, the pin is then toggled.

When a channel is configured for edge-aligned PWM (CPWMS = 0, MSnB = 1, and ELSnB:ELSnA ≠ 0:0), the TPMxCHn pin is an output controlled by the TPM, and ELSnB:ELSnA bits control the polarity of the PWM output signal. When ELSnB is set and ELSnA is cleared, the TPMxCHn pin is forced high at the start of each new period (TPMxCNT=0x0000), and it is forced low when the channel value register matches the TPM counter. When ELSnA is set, the TPMxCHn pin is forced low at the start of each new period (TPMxCNT=0x0000), and it is forced high when the channel value register matches the TPM counter.

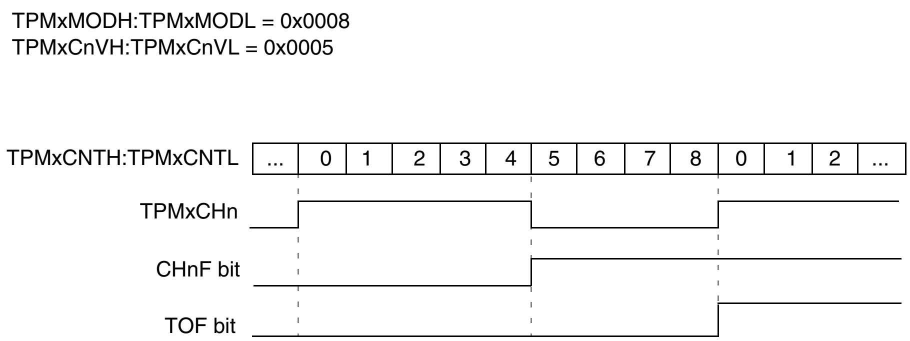


Figure 11-3. High-true pulse of an edge-aligned PWM

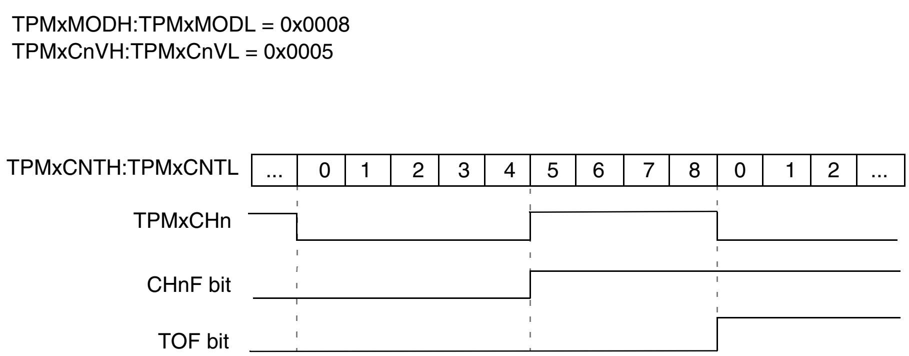


Figure 11-4. Low-true pulse of an edge-aligned PWM

When the TPM is configured for center-aligned PWM (CPWMS = 1 and ELSnB:ELSnA ≠ 0:0), the TPMxCHn pins are outputs controlled by the TPM, and ELSnB:ELSnA bits control the polarity of the PWM output signal. If ELSnB is set and ELSnA is cleared, the corresponding TPMxCHn pin is cleared when the TPM counter is counting up, and the channel value register matches the TPM counter; and it is set when the TPM counter is counting down, and the channel value register matches the TPM counter. If ELSnA is set, the corresponding TPMxCHn pin is set when the TPM counter is counting up and the channel value register matches the TPM counter; and it is cleared when the TPM counter is counting down and the channel value register matches the TPM counter.

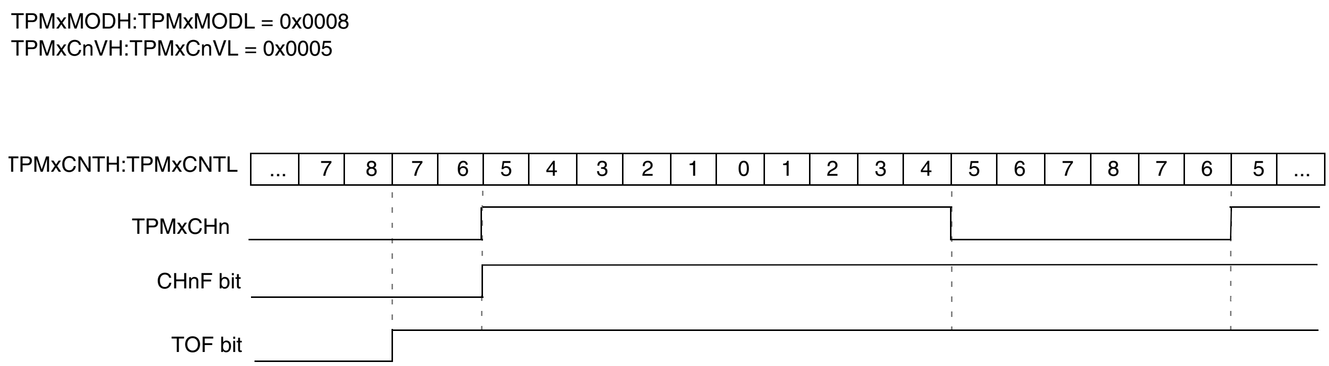


Figure 11-5. High-true pulse of a center-aligned PWM

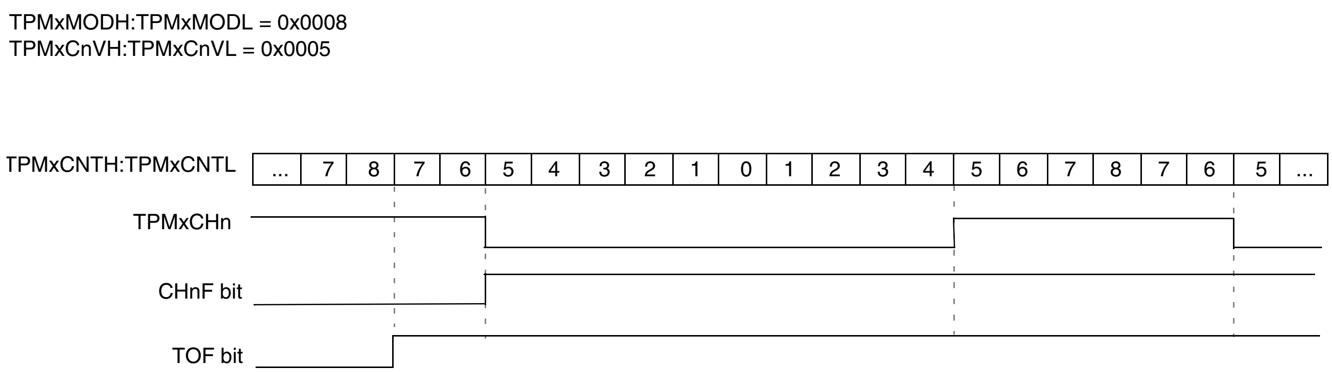


Figure 11-6. Low-true pulse of a center-aligned PWM

11.3 Register Definition

11.3.1 TPM Status and Control Register (TPMxSC)

TPMxSC contains the overflow status flag and control bits used to configure the interrupt enable, TPM configuration, clock source, and prescale factor. These controls relate to all channels within this timer module.

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	TOF	TOIE	CPWMS	CLKSB	CLKSA	PS2	PS1	PS0
W	0							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 11-7. TPM Status and Control Register (TPMxSC)

Table 11-2. TPMxSC Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7 TOF	Timer overflow flag. This read/write flag is set when the TPM counter resets to 0x0000 after reaching the modulo value programmed in the TPM counter modulo registers. Clear TOF by reading the TPM status and control register when TOF is set and then writing a logic 0 to TOF. If another TPM overflow occurs before the clearing sequence is completed, the sequence is reset so TOF remains set after the clear sequence was completed for the earlier TOF. This is done so a TOF interrupt request cannot be lost during the clearing sequence for a previous TOF. Reset clears TOF. Writing a logic 1 to TOF has no effect. 0 TPM counter has not reached modulo value or overflow. 1 TPM counter has overflowed.
6 TOIE	Timer overflow interrupt enable. This read/write bit enables TPM overflow interrupts. If TOIE is set, an interrupt is generated when TOF equals one. Reset clears TOIE. 0 TOF interrupts inhibited (use for software polling). 1 TOF interrupts enabled.
5 CPWMS	Center-aligned PWM select. This read/write bit selects CPWM operating mode. By default, the TPM operates in up-counting mode for input capture, output compare, and edge-aligned PWM functions. Setting CPWMS reconfigures the TPM to operate in up/down counting mode for CPWM functions. Reset clears CPWMS. 0 All channels operate as input capture, output compare, or edge-aligned PWM mode as selected by the MSnB:MSnA control bits in each channel's status and control register. 1 All channels operate in center-aligned PWM mode.
4–3 CLKS[B:A]	Clock source selection bits. As shown in Table 11-3, this 2-bit field is used to disable the TPM counter or select one of three clock sources to TPM counter and counter prescaler.
2–0 PS[2:0]	Prescale factor select. This 3-bit field selects one of eight division factors for the TPM clock as shown in Table 11-4. This prescaler is located after any clock synchronization or clock selection so it affects the clock selected to drive the TPM counter. The new prescale factor affects the selected clock on the next bus clock cycle after the new value is updated into the register bits.

Table 11-3. TPM Clock Selection

CLKSB:CLKSA	TPM Clock to Prescaler Input
00	No clock selected (TPM counter disable)
01	Bus clock

Table 11-3. TPM Clock Selection

CLKSB:CLKSA	TPM Clock to Prescaler Input
10	Fixed frequency clock
11	External clock

Table 11-4. Prescale Factor Selection

PS[2:0]	TPM Clock Divided-by
000	1
001	2
010	4
011	8
100	16
101	32
110	64
111	128

11.3.2 TPM-Counter Registers (TPMxCNTH:TPMxCNTL)

The two read-only TPM counter registers contain the high and low bytes of the value in the TPM counter. Reading either byte (TPMxCNTH or TPMxCNTL) latches the contents of both bytes into a buffer where they remain latched until the other half is read. This allows coherent 16-bit reads in big-endian or little-endian order that makes this more friendly to various compiler implementations. The coherency mechanism is automatically restarted by an MCU reset or any write to the timer status/control register (TPMxSC).

Reset clears the TPM counter registers. Writing any value to TPMxCNTH or TPMxCNTL also clears the TPM counter (TPMxCNTH:TPMxCNTL) and resets the coherency mechanism, regardless of the data involved in the write.

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	TPMxCNT[15:8]							
W	Any write to TPMxCNTH clears the 16-bit counter							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 11-8. TPM Counter Register High (TPMxCNTH)

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	TPMxCNT[7:0]							
W	Any write to TPMxCNTL clears the 16-bit counter							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 11-9. TPM Counter Register Low (TPMxCNTL)

When BDM is active, the timer counter is frozen (this is the value you read). The coherency mechanism is frozen so the buffer latches remain in the state they were in when the BDM became active, even if one or both counter halves are read while BDM is active. This assures that if you were in the middle of reading a 16-bit register when BDM became active, it reads the appropriate value from the other half of the 16-bit value after returning to normal execution.

In BDM mode, writing any value to TPMxSC, TPMxCNTH, or TPMxCNTL registers resets the read coherency mechanism of the TPMxCNTH:TPMxCNTL registers, regardless of the data involved in the write.

11.3.3 TPM Counter Modulo Registers (TPMxMODH:TPMxMODL)

The read/write TPM modulo registers contain the modulo value for the TPM counter. After the TPM counter reaches the modulo value, the TPM counter resumes counting from 0x0000 at the next clock, and the overflow flag (TOF) becomes set. Writing to TPMxMODH or TPMxMODL inhibits the TOF bit and overflow interrupts until the other byte is written. Reset sets the TPM counter modulo registers to 0x0000 that results in a free running timer counter (modulo disabled).

Writes to any of the registers TPMxMODH and TPMxMODL actually writes to buffer registers and the registers are updated with the value of their write buffer according to the value of CLKSB:CLKSA bits:

- If CLKSB and CLKSA are cleared, the registers are updated when the second byte is written
- If CLKSB and CLKSA are not cleared, the registers are updated after both bytes were written, and the TPM counter changes from (TPMxMODH:TPMxMODL – 1) to (TPMxMODH:TPMxMODL). If the TPM counter is a free-running counter, the update is made when the TPM counter changes from 0xFFFE to 0xFFFF

The latching mechanism is manually reset by writing to the TPMxSC address (whether BDM is active or not).

When BDM is active, the coherency mechanism is frozen (unless reset by writing to TPMxSC register) so the buffer latches remain in the state they were in when the BDM became active, even if one or both halves of the modulo register are written while BDM is active. Any write to the modulo registers bypasses the buffer latches and directly writes to the modulo register while BDM is active.

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	TPMxMOD[15:8]							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 11-10. TPM Counter Modulo Register High (TPMxMODH)

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	TPMxMOD[7:0]							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 11-11. TPM Counter Modulo Register Low (TPMxMODL)

Reset the TPM counter before writing to the TPM modulo registers to avoid confusion about when the first counter overflow occurs.

11.3.4 TPM Channel n Status and Control Register (TPMxCnSC)

TPMxCnSC contains the channel-interrupt-status flag and control bits that configure the interrupt enable, channel configuration, and pin function.

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	CHnF	CHnIE	MSnB	MSnA	ELSnB	ELSnA	0	0
W	0							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

= Unimplemented or Reserved

Figure 11-12. TPM Channel n Status and Control Register (TPMxCnSC)

Table 11-5. TPMxCnSC Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7 CHnF	Channel n flag. When channel n is an input capture channel, this read/write bit is set when an active edge occurs on the channel n input. When channel n is an output compare or edge-aligned/center-aligned PWM channel, CHnF is set when the value in the TPM counter registers matches the value in the TPM channel n value registers. When channel n is an edge-aligned/center-aligned PWM channel and the duty cycle is set to 0% or 100%, CHnF is not set even when the value in the TPM counter registers matches the value in the TPM channel n value registers. A corresponding interrupt is requested when this bit is set and channel n interrupt is enabled (CHnIE = 1). Clear CHnF by reading TPMxCnSC while this bit is set and then writing a logic 0 to it. If another interrupt request occurs before the clearing sequence is completed CHnF remains set. This is done so a CHnF interrupt request is not lost due to clearing a previous CHnF. Reset clears this bit. Writing a logic 1 to CHnF has no effect. 0 No input capture or output compare event occurred on channel n. 1 Input capture or output compare event on channel n.
6 CHnIE	Channel n interrupt enable. This read/write bit enables interrupts from channel n. Reset clears this bit. 0 Channel n interrupt requests disabled (use for software polling). 1 Channel n interrupt requests enabled.
5 MSnB	Mode select B for TPM channel n. When CPWMS is cleared, setting the MSnB bit configures TPM channel n for edge-aligned PWM mode. Refer to the summary of channel mode and setup controls in Table 11-6.
4 MSnA	Mode select A for TPM channel n. When CPWMS and MSnB are cleared, the MSnA bit configures TPM channel n for input capture mode or output compare mode. Refer to Table 11-6 for a summary of channel mode and setup controls. **Note:** If the associated port pin is not stable for at least two bus clock cycles before changing to input capture mode, it is possible to get an unexpected indication of an edge trigger.
3–2 ELSnB ELSnA	Edge/level select bits. Depending upon the operating mode for the timer channel as set by CPWMS:MSnB:MSnA and shown in Table 11-6, these bits select the polarity of the input edge that triggers an input capture event, select the level that is driven in response to an output compare match, or select the polarity of the PWM output. If ELSnB and ELSnA bits are cleared, the channel pin is not controlled by TPM. This configuration can be used by software compare only, because it does not require the use of a pin for the channel.

Table 11-6. Mode, Edge, and Level Selection

CPWMS	MSnB:MSnA	ELSnB:ELSnA	Mode	Configuration
X	XX	00	Pin is not controlled by TPM. It is reverted to general purpose I/O or other peripheral control	
0	00	01	Input capture	Capture on rising edge only
		10		Capture on falling edge only
		11		Capture on rising or falling edge
	01	00	Output compare	Software compare only
		01		Toggle output on channel match
		10		Clear output on channel match
		11		Set output on channel match
	1X	10	Edge-aligned PWM	High-true pulses (clear output on channel match)
		X1		Low-true pulses (set output on channel match)
1	XX	10	Center-aligned PWM	High-true pulses (clear output on channel match when TPM counter is counting up)
		X1		Low-true pulses (set output on channel match when TPM counter is counting up)

11.3.5 TPM Channel Value Registers (TPMxCnVH:TPMxCnVL)

These read/write registers contain the captured TPM counter value of the input capture function or the output compare value for the output compare or PWM functions. The channel registers are cleared by reset.

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	TPMxCnV[15:8]							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 11-13. TPM Channel Value Register High (TPMxCnVH)

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	TPMxCnV[7:0]							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 11-14. TPM Channel Value Register Low (TPMxCnVL)

In input capture mode, reading either byte (TPMxCnVH or TPMxCnVL) latches the contents of both bytes into a buffer where they remain latched until the other half is read. This latching mechanism also resets (becomes unlatched) when the TPMxCnSC register is written (whether BDM mode is active or not). Any write to the channel registers is ignored during the input capture mode.

When BDM is active, the coherency mechanism is frozen (unless reset by writing to TPMxCnSC register) so the buffer latches remain in the state they were in when the BDM became active, even if one or both halves of the channel register are read while BDM is active. This assures that if you were in the middle of reading a 16-bit register when BDM became active, it reads the appropriate value from the other half of the 16-bit value after returning to normal execution. The value read from the TPMxCnVH and TPMxCnVL registers in BDM mode is the value of these registers and not the value of their read buffer.

In output compare or PWM modes, writing to either byte (TPMxCnVH or TPMxCnVL) latches the value into a buffer. After both bytes were written, they are transferred as a coherent 16-bit value into the timer-channel registers according to the value of CLKSB:CLKSA bits and the selected mode:

- If CLKSB and CLKSA are cleared, the registers are updated when the second byte is written.
- If CLKSB and CLKSA are not cleared and in output compare mode, the registers are updated after the second byte is written and on the next change of the TPM counter (end of the prescaler counting).
- If CLKSB and CLKSA are not cleared and in EPWM or CPWM modes, the registers are updated after both bytes were written, and the TPM counter changes from (TPMxMODH:TPMxMODL – 1) to (TPMxMODH:TPMxMODL). If the TPM counter is a free-running counter, the update is made when the TPM counter changes from 0xFFFE to 0xFFFF.

The latching mechanism is manually reset by writing to the TPMxCnSC register (whether BDM mode is active or not). This latching mechanism allows coherent 16-bit writes in either big-endian or little-endian order that is friendly to various compiler implementations.

When BDM is active, the coherency mechanism is frozen so the buffer latches remain in the state they were in when the BDM became active even if one or both halves of the channel register are written while BDM is active. Any write to the channel registers bypasses the buffer latches and directly write to the channel register while BDM is active. The values written to the channel register while BDM is active are used for PWM and output compare operation after normal execution resumes. Writes to the channel registers while BDM is active do not interfere with partial completion of a coherency sequence. After the coherency mechanism is fully exercised, the channel registers are updated using the buffered values (while BDM was not active).

11.4 Functional Description

All TPM functions are associated with a central 16-bit counter that allows flexible selection of the clock and prescale factor. There is also a 16-bit modulo register associated with this counter.

The CPWMS control bit chooses between center-aligned PWM operation for all channels in the TPM (CPWMS=1) or general purpose timing functions (CPWMS=0) where each channel can independently be configured to operate in input capture, output compare, or edge-aligned PWM mode. The CPWMS control bit is located in the TPM status and control register because it affects all channels within the TPM and influences the way the main counter operates. (In CPWM mode, the counter changes to an up/down mode rather than the up-counting mode used for general purpose timer functions.)

The following sections describe TPM counter and each of the timer operating modes (input capture, output compare, edge-aligned PWM, and center-aligned PWM). Because details of pin operation and interrupt activity depend upon the operating mode, these topics are covered in the associated mode explanation sections.

11.4.1 Counter

All timer functions are based on the main 16-bit counter (TPMxCNTH:TPMxCNTL). This section discusses selection of the clock, end-of-count overflow, up-counting vs. up/down counting, and manual counter reset.

11.4.1.1 Counter Clock Source

The 2-bit field, CLKSB:CLKSA, in the timer status and control register (TPMxSC) disables the TPM counter or selects one of three clock sources to TPM counter (Table 11-3). After any MCU reset, CLKSB and CLKSA are cleared so no clock is selected and the TPM counter is disabled (TPM is in a very low power state). You can read or write these control bits at any time. Disabling the TPM counter by writing 00 to CLKSB:CLKSA bits, does not affect the values in the TPM counter or other registers.

The fixed frequency clock is an alternative clock source for the TPM counter that allows the selection of a clock other than the bus clock or external clock. This clock input is defined by chip integration. You can refer chip specific documentation for further information. Due to TPM hardware implementation limitations, the frequency of the fixed frequency clock must not exceed the bus clock frequency. The fixed frequency clock has no limitations for low frequency operation.

The external clock passes through a synchronizer clocked by the bus clock to assure that counter transitions are properly aligned to bus clock transitions.Therefore, in order to meet Nyquist criteria considering also jitter, the frequency of the external clock source must not exceed 1/4 of the bus clock frequency.

When the external clock source is shared with a TPM channel pin, this pin must not be used in input capture mode. However, this channel can be used in output compare mode with ELSnB:ELSnA = 0:0 for software timing functions. In this case, the channel output is disabled, but the channel match events continue to set the appropriate flag.

11.4.1.2 Counter Overflow and Modulo Reset

An interrupt flag and enable are associated with the 16-bit main counter. The flag (TOF) is a software-accessible indication that the timer counter has overflowed. The enable signal selects between software polling (TOIE = 0) where no interrupt is generated, or interrupt-driven operation (TOIE = 1) where the interrupt is generated whenever the TOF is set.

The conditions causing TOF to become set depend on whether the TPM is configured for center-aligned PWM (CPWMS = 1). If CPWMS is cleared and there is no modulus limit, the 16-bit timer counter counts from 0x0000 through 0xFFFF and overflows to 0x0000 on the next counting clock. TOF is set at the transition from 0xFFFF to 0x0000. When a modulus limit is set, TOF is set at the transition from the value set in the modulus register to 0x0000. When the TPM is in center-aligned PWM mode (CPWMS = 1), the TOF flag is set as the counter changes direction at the end of the count value set in the modulus register (at the transition from the value set in the modulus register to the next lower count value). This corresponds to the end of a PWM period (the 0x0000 count value corresponds to the center of a period).

11.4.1.3 Counting Modes

The main timer counter has two counting modes. When center-aligned PWM is selected (CPWMS = 1), the counter operates in up/down counting mode. Otherwise, the counter operates as a simple up counter. As an up counter, the timer counter counts from 0x0000 through its terminal count and continues with 0x0000. The terminal count is 0xFFFF or a modulus value in TPMxMODH:TPMxMODL.

When center-aligned PWM operation is specified, the counter counts up from 0x0000 through its terminal count and then down to 0x0000 where it changes back to up counting. The terminal count value and 0x0000 are normal length counts (one timer clock period long). In this mode, the timer overflow flag (TOF) is set at the end of the terminal-count period (as the count changes to the next lower count value).

11.4.1.4 Manual Counter Reset

The main timer counter can be manually reset at any time by writing any value to TPMxCNTH or TPMxCNTL. Resetting the counter in this manner also resets the coherency mechanism in case only half of the counter was read before resetting the count.

11.4.2 Channel Mode Selection

If CPWMS is cleared, MSnB and MSnA bits determine the basic mode of operation for the corresponding channel. Choices include input capture, output compare, and edge-aligned PWM.

11.4.2.1 Input Capture Mode

With the input capture function, the TPM can capture the time at which an external event occurs. When an active edge occurs on the pin of an input capture channel, the TPM latches the contents of the TPM counter into the channel-value registers (TPMxCnVH:TPMxCnVL). Rising edges, falling edges, or any edge is chosen as the active edge that triggers an input capture.

In input capture mode, the TPMxCnVH and TPMxCnVL registers are read only.

When either half of the 16-bit capture register is read, the other half is latched into a buffer to support coherent 16-bit accesses in big-endian or little-endian order. The coherency sequence can be manually reset by writing to TPMxCnSC.

An input capture event sets a flag bit (CHnF) that optionally generates a CPU interrupt request.

While in BDM, the input capture function works as configured. When an external event occurs, the TPM latches the contents of the TPM counter (frozen because of the BDM mode) into the channel value registers and sets the flag bit.

11.4.2.2 Output Compare Mode

With the output compare function, the TPM can generate timed pulses with programmable position, polarity, duration, and frequency. When the counter reaches the value in TPMxCnVH:TPMxCnVL registers of an output compare channel, the TPM can set, clear, or toggle the channel pin.

Writes to any of TPMxCnVH and TPMxCnVL registers actually write to buffer registers. In output compare mode, the TPMxCnVH:TPMxCnVL registers are updated with the value of their write buffer only after both bytes were written and according to the value of CLKSB:CLKSA bits:

- If CLKSB and CLKSA are cleared, the registers are updated when the second byte is written
- If CLKSB and CLKSA are not cleared, the registers are updated at the next change of the TPM counter (end of the prescaler counting) after the second byte is written.

The coherency sequence can be manually reset by writing to the channel status/control register (TPMxCnSC).

An output compare event sets a flag bit (CHnF) that optionally generates a CPU interrupt request.

11.4.2.3 Edge-Aligned PWM Mode

This type of PWM output uses the normal up-counting mode of the timer counter (CPWMS=0) and can be used when other channels in the same TPM are configured for input capture or output compare functions. The period of this PWM signal is determined by the value of the modulus register (TPMxMODH:TPMxMODL) plus 1. The duty cycle is determined by the value of the timer channel register (TPMxCnVH:TPMxCnVL). The polarity of this PWM signal is determined by ELSnA bit. 0% and 100% duty cycle cases are possible.

The time between the modulus overflow and the channel match value (TPMxCnVH:TPMxCnVL) is the pulse width or duty cycle (Figure 11-15). If ELSnA is cleared, the counter overflow forces the PWM signal high, and the channel match forces the PWM signal low. If ELSnA is set, the counter overflow forces the PWM signal low, and the channel match forces the PWM signal high.

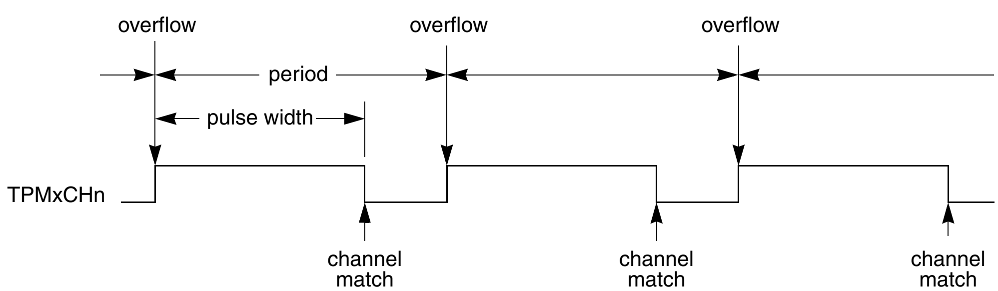


Figure 11-15. EPWM period and pulse width (ELSnA=0)

When the channel value register is set to 0x0000, the duty cycle is 0%. A 100% duty cycle is achieved by setting the timer-channel register (TPMxCnVH:TPMxCnVL) to a value greater than the modulus setting. This implies that the modulus setting must be less than 0xFFFF in order to get 100% duty cycle.

The timer channel registers are buffered to ensure coherent 16-bit updates and to avoid unexpected PWM pulse widths. Writes to any of the registers TPMxCnVH and TPMxCnVL actually write to buffer registers. In edge-aligned PWM mode, the TPMxCnVH:TPMxCnVL registers are updated with the value of their write buffer according to the value of CLKSB:CLKSA bits:

- If CLKSB and CLKSA are cleared, the registers are updated when the second byte is written
- If CLKSB and CLKSA are not cleared, the registers are updated after both bytes were written, and the TPM counter changes from (TPMxMODH:TPMxMODL – 1) to

(TPMxMODH:TPMxMODL). If the TPM counter is a free-running counter, the update is made when the TPM counter changes from 0xFFFE to 0xFFFF.

11.4.2.4 Center-Aligned PWM Mode

This type of PWM output uses the up/down counting mode of the timer counter (CPWMS=1). The channel match value in TPMxCnVH:TPMxCnVL determines the pulse width (duty cycle) of the PWM signal while the period is determined by the value in TPMxMODH:TPMxMODL. TPMxMODH:TPMxMODL must be kept in the range of 0x0001 to 0x7FFF because values outside this range can produce ambiguous results. ELSnA determines the polarity of the CPWM signal.

pulse width = 2 × (TPMxCnVH:TPMxCnVL)

period = 2 × (TPMxMODH:TPMxMODL); TPMxMODH:TPMxMODL = 0x0001–0x7FFF

If TPMxCnVH:TPMxCnVL is zero or negative (bit 15 set), the duty cycle is 0%. If TPMxCnVH:TPMxCnVL is a positive value (bit 15 clear) and is greater than the non-zero modulus setting, the duty cycle is 100% because the channel match never occurs. This implies the usable range of periods set by the modulus register is 0x0001 through 0x7FFE (0x7FFF if you do not need to generate 100% duty cycle). This is not a significant limitation. The resulting period is much longer than required for normal applications.

All zeros in TPMxMODH:TPMxMODL is a special case that must not be used with center-aligned PWM mode. When CPWMS is cleared, this case corresponds to the counter running free from 0x0000 through 0xFFFF. When CPWMS is set, the counter needs a valid match to the modulus register somewhere other than at 0x0000 in order to change directions from up-counting to down-counting.

The channel match value in the TPM channel registers (times two) determines the pulse width (duty cycle) of the CPWM signal (Figure 11-16). If ELSnA is cleared, a channel match occurring while counting up clears the CPWM output signal and a channel match occurring while counting down sets the output. The counter counts up until it reaches the modulo setting in TPMxMODH:TPMxMODL, then counts down until it reaches zero. This sets the period equal to two times TPMxMODH:TPMxMODL.

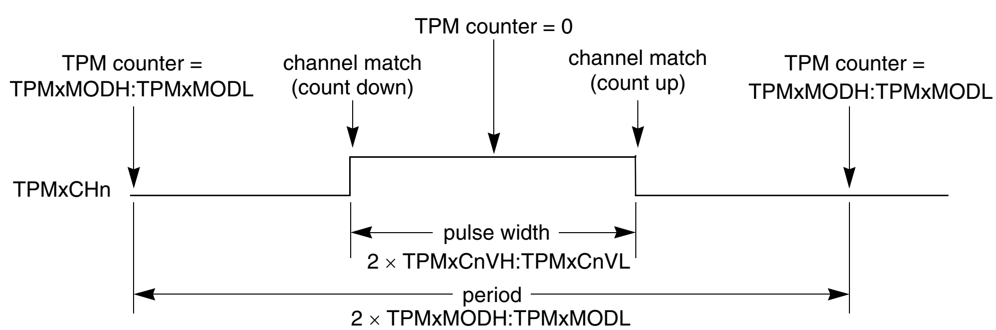


Figure 11-16. CPWM period and pulse width (ELSnA=0)

Center-aligned PWM outputs typically produce less noise than edge-aligned PWMs because fewer I/O pin transitions are lined up at the same system clock edge. This type of PWM is also required for some types of motor drives.

Input capture, output compare, and edge-aligned PWM functions do not make sense when the counter is operating in up/down counting mode so this implies that all active channels within a TPM must be used in CPWM mode when CPWMS is set.

The timer channel registers are buffered to ensure coherent 16-bit updates and to avoid unexpected PWM pulse widths. Writes to any of the registers TPMxCnVH and TPMxCnVL actually write to buffer registers. In center-aligned PWM mode, the TPMxCnVH:TPMxCnVL registers are updated with the value of their write buffer according to the value of CLKSB:CLKSA bits:

- If CLKSB and CLKSA are cleared, the registers are updated when the second byte is written
- If CLKSB and CLKSA are not cleared, the registers are updated after both bytes were written, and the TPM counter changes from (TPMxMODH:TPMxMODL – 1) to (TPMxMODH:TPMxMODL). If the TPM counter is a free-running counter, the update is made when the TPM counter changes from 0xFFFE to 0xFFFF.

When TPMxCNTH:TPMxCNTL equals TPMxMODH:TPMxMODL, the TPM can optionally generate a TOF interrupt (at the end of this count).

11.5 Reset Overview

11.5.1 General

The TPM is reset whenever any MCU reset occurs.

11.5.2 Description of Reset Operation

Reset clears TPMxSC that disables TPM counter clock and overflow interrupt (TOIE=0). CPWMS, MSnB, MSnA, ELSnB, and ELSnA are all cleared. This configures all TPM channels for input capture operation and the associated pins are not controlled by TPM.

11.6 Interrupts

11.6.1 General

The TPM generates an optional interrupt for the main counter overflow and an interrupt for each channel. The meaning of channel interrupts depends on each channel's mode of operation. If the channel is configured for input capture, the interrupt flag is set each time the selected input capture edge is recognized. If the channel is configured for output compare or PWM modes, the interrupt flag is set each time the main timer counter matches the value in the 16-bit channel value register.

All TPM interrupts are listed in Table 11-7.

Table 11-7. Interrupt Summary

Interrupt	Local Enable	Source	Description
TOF	TOIE	Counter overflow	Set each time the TPM counter reaches its terminal count (at transition to its next count value)
CHnF	CHnIE	Channel event	An input capture event or channel match took place on channel n

The TPM module provides high-true interrupt signals.

11.6.2 Description of Interrupt Operation

For each interrupt source in the TPM, a flag bit is set upon recognition of the interrupt condition such as timer overflow, channel input capture, or output compare events. This flag is read (polled) by software to determine that the action has occurred, or an associated enable bit (TOIE or CHnIE) can be set to enable the interrupt generation. While the interrupt enable bit is set, the interrupt is generated whenever the associated interrupt flag is set. Software must perform a sequence of steps to clear the interrupt flag before returning from the interrupt-service routine.

TPM interrupt flags are cleared by a two-step process including a read of the flag bit while it is set followed by a write of zero to the bit. If a new event is detected between these two steps, the sequence is reset and the interrupt flag remains set after the second step to avoid the possibility of missing the new event.

11.6.2.1 Timer Overflow Interrupt (TOF) Description

The meaning and details of operation for TOF interrupts varies slightly depending upon the mode of operation of the TPM system (general purpose timing functions versus center-aligned PWM operation). The flag is cleared by the two step sequence described above.

11.6.2.1.1 Normal Case

When CPWMS is cleared, TOF is set when the timer counter changes from the terminal count (the value in the modulo register) to 0x0000. If the TPM counter is a free-running counter, the update is made when the TPM counter changes from 0xFFFF to 0x0000.

11.6.2.1.2 Center-Aligned PWM Case

When CPWMS is set, TOF is set when the timer counter changes direction from up-counting to down-counting at the end of the terminal count (the value in the modulo register).

11.6.2.2 Channel Event Interrupt Description

The meaning of channel interrupts depends on the channel’s current mode (input capture, output compare, edge-aligned PWM, or center-aligned PWM).

11.6.2.2.1 Input Capture Events

When a channel is configured as an input capture channel, the ELSnB:ELSnA bits select if channel pin is not controlled by TPM, rising edges, falling edges, or any edge as the edge that triggers an input capture event. When the selected edge is detected, the interrupt flag is set. The flag is cleared by the two-step sequence described in Section 11.6.2, "Description of Interrupt Operation."

11.6.2.2.2 Output Compare Events

When a channel is configured as an output compare channel, the interrupt flag is set each time the main timer counter matches the 16-bit value in the channel value register. The flag is cleared by the two-step sequence described in Section 11.6.2, "Description of Interrupt Operation."

11.6.2.2.3 PWM End-of-Duty-Cycle Events

When the channel is configured for edge-aligned PWM, the channel flag is set when the timer counter matches the channel value register that marks the end of the active duty cycle period. When the channel is configured for center-aligned PWM, the timer count matches the channel value register twice during each PWM cycle. In this CPWM case, the channel flag is set at the start and at the end of the active duty cycle period when the timer counter matches the channel value register. The flag is cleared by the two-step sequence described in Section 11.6.2, "Description of Interrupt Operation."

Chapter 12
Development Support

12.1 Introduction

Development support system in the HCS08 include the background debug controller (BDC). The BDC provides a single-wire debug interface to the target MCU that provides a convenient interface for programming the on-chip FLASH and other nonvolatile memories. The BDC is also the primary debug interface for development and allows non-intrusive access to memory data and traditional debug features such as CPU register modify, breakpoints, and single instruction trace commands.

In the HCS08 Family, address and data bus signals are not available on external pins (not even in test modes). Debug is done through commands fed into the target MCU via the single-wire background debug interface. The debug module provides a means to selectively trigger and capture bus information so an external development system can reconstruct what happened inside the MCU on a cycle-by-cycle basis without having external access to the address and data signals.

12.1.1 Forcing Active Background

The method for forcing active background mode depends on the specific HCS08 derivative. For the MC9S08SC4, you can force active background after POR by holding the BKGD pin low as the device exits the reset condition. You can also force active background by driving BKGD low immediately after a serial background command that writes a one to the BDFR bit in the SBDFR register. If no debug pod is connected to the BKGD pin, the MCU will always reset into normal operating mode.

12.1.2 Module Configuration

The alternate BDC clock source is the ICSLCLK. This clock source is selected by clearing the CLKSW bit in the BDCSCR register.

12.1.3 Features

Features of the BDC module include:

- Single pin for mode selection and background communications
- BDC registers are not located in the memory map
- SYNC command to determine target communications rate
- Non-intrusive commands for memory access
- Active background mode commands for CPU register access
- GO and TRACE1 commands
- BACKGROUND command can wake CPU from stop or wait modes
- One hardware address breakpoint built into BDC
- Oscillator runs in stop mode, if BDC enabled
- COP watchdog disabled while in active background mode

12.2 Background Debug Controller (BDC)

All MCUs in the HCS08 Family contain a single-wire background debug interface that supports in-circuit programming of on-chip nonvolatile memory and sophisticated non-intrusive debug capabilities. Unlike debug interfaces on earlier 8-bit MCUs, this system does not interfere with normal application resources. It does not use any user memory or locations in the memory map and does not share any on-chip peripherals.

BDC commands are divided into two groups:

- Active background mode commands require that the target MCU is in active background mode (the user program is not running). Active background mode commands allow the CPU registers to be read or written, and allow the user to trace one user instruction at a time, or GO to the user program from active background mode.
- Non-intrusive commands can be executed at any time even while the user's program is running. Non-intrusive commands allow a user to read or write MCU memory locations or access status and control registers within the background debug controller.

Typically, a relatively simple interface pod is used to translate commands from a host computer into commands for the custom serial interface to the single-wire background debug system. Depending on the development tool vendor, this interface pod may use a standard RS-232 serial port, a parallel printer port, or some other type of communications such as a universal serial bus (USB) to communicate between the host PC and the pod. The pod typically connects to the target system with ground, the BKGD pin, $\overline{\text{RESET}}$, and sometimes V_{DD}. An open-drain connection to reset allows the host to force a target system reset, which is useful to regain control of a lost target system or to control startup of a target system before the on-chip nonvolatile memory has been programmed. Sometimes V_{DD} can be used to allow the pod to use power from the target system to avoid the need for a separate power supply. However, if the pod is powered separately, it can be connected to a running target system without forcing a target system reset or otherwise disturbing the running application program.

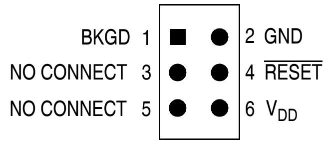


Figure 12-1. BDM Tool Connector

12.2.1 BKGD Pin Description

BKGD is the single-wire background debug interface pin. The primary function of this pin is for bidirectional serial communication of active background mode commands and data. During reset, this pin is used to select between starting in active background mode or starting the user's application program. This pin is also used to request a timed sync response pulse to allow a host development tool to determine the correct clock frequency for background debug serial communications.

BDC serial communications use a custom serial protocol first introduced on the M68HC12 Family of microcontrollers. This protocol assumes the host knows the communication clock rate that is determined by the target BDC clock rate. All communication is initiated and controlled by the host that drives a high-to-low edge to signal the beginning of each bit time. Commands and data are sent most significant bit first (MSB first). For a detailed description of the communications protocol, refer to Section 12.2.2, "Communication Details."

If a host is attempting to communicate with a target MCU that has an unknown BDC clock rate, a SYNC command may be sent to the target MCU to request a timed sync response signal from which the host can determine the correct communication speed.

BKGD is a pseudo-open-drain pin and there is an on-chip pullup so no external pullup resistor is required. Unlike typical open-drain pins, the external RC time constant on this pin, which is influenced by external capacitance, plays almost no role in signal rise time. The custom protocol provides for brief, actively driven speedup pulses to force rapid rise times on this pin without risking harmful drive level conflicts. Refer to Section 12.2.2, "Communication Details," for more detail.

When no debugger pod is connected to the 6-pin BDM interface connector, the internal pullup on BKGD chooses normal operating mode. When a debug pod is connected to BKGD it is possible to force the MCU into active background mode after reset. The specific conditions for forcing active background depend upon the HCS08 derivative (refer to the introduction to this Development Support section). It is not necessary to reset the target MCU to communicate with it through the background debug interface.

12.2.2 Communication Details

The BDC serial interface requires the external controller to generate a falling edge on the BKGD pin to indicate the start of each bit time. The external controller provides this falling edge whether data is transmitted or received.

BKGD is a pseudo-open-drain pin that can be driven either by an external controller or by the MCU. Data is transferred MSB first at 16 BDC clock cycles per bit (nominal speed). The interface times out if 512 BDC clock cycles occur between falling edges from the host. Any BDC command that was in progress when this timeout occurs is aborted without affecting the memory or operating mode of the target MCU system.

The custom serial protocol requires the debug pod to know the target BDC communication clock speed.

The clock switch (CLKSW) control bit in the BDC status and control register allows the user to select the BDC clock source. The BDC clock source can either be the bus or the alternate BDC clock source.

The BKGD pin can receive a high or low level or transmit a high or low level. The following diagrams show timing for each of these cases. Interface timing is synchronous to clocks in the target BDC, but asynchronous to the external host. The internal BDC clock signal is shown for reference in counting cycles.

Figure 12-2 shows an external host transmitting a logic 1 or 0 to the BKGD pin of a target HCS08 MCU. The host is asynchronous to the target so there is a 0-to-1 cycle delay from the host-generated falling edge to where the target perceives the beginning of the bit time. Ten target BDC clock cycles later, the target senses the bit level on the BKGD pin. Typically, the host actively drives the pseudo-open-drain BKGD pin during host-to-target transmissions to speed up rising edges. Because the target does not drive the BKGD pin during the host-to-target transmission period, there is no need to treat the line as an open-drain signal during this period.

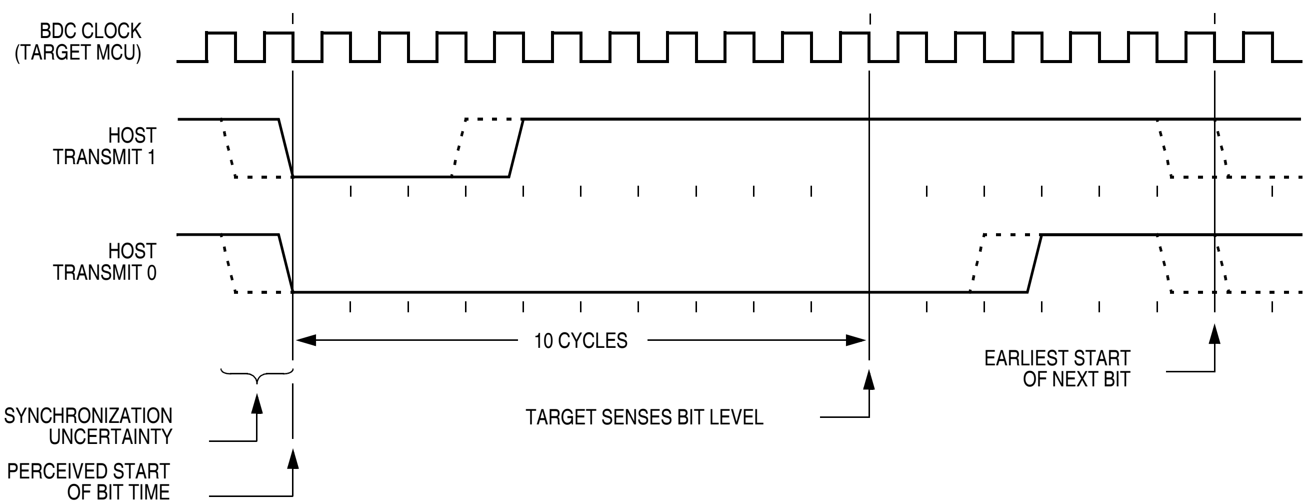


Figure 12-2. BDC Host-to-Target Serial Bit Timing

Figure 12-3 shows the host receiving a logic 1 from the target HCS08 MCU. Because the host is asynchronous to the target MCU, there is a 0-to-1 cycle delay from the host-generated falling edge on BKGD to the perceived start of the bit time in the target MCU. The host holds the BKGD pin low long enough for the target to recognize it (at least two target BDC cycles). The host must release the low drive before the target MCU drives a brief active-high speedup pulse seven cycles after the perceived start of the bit time. The host should sample the bit level about 10 cycles after it started the bit time.

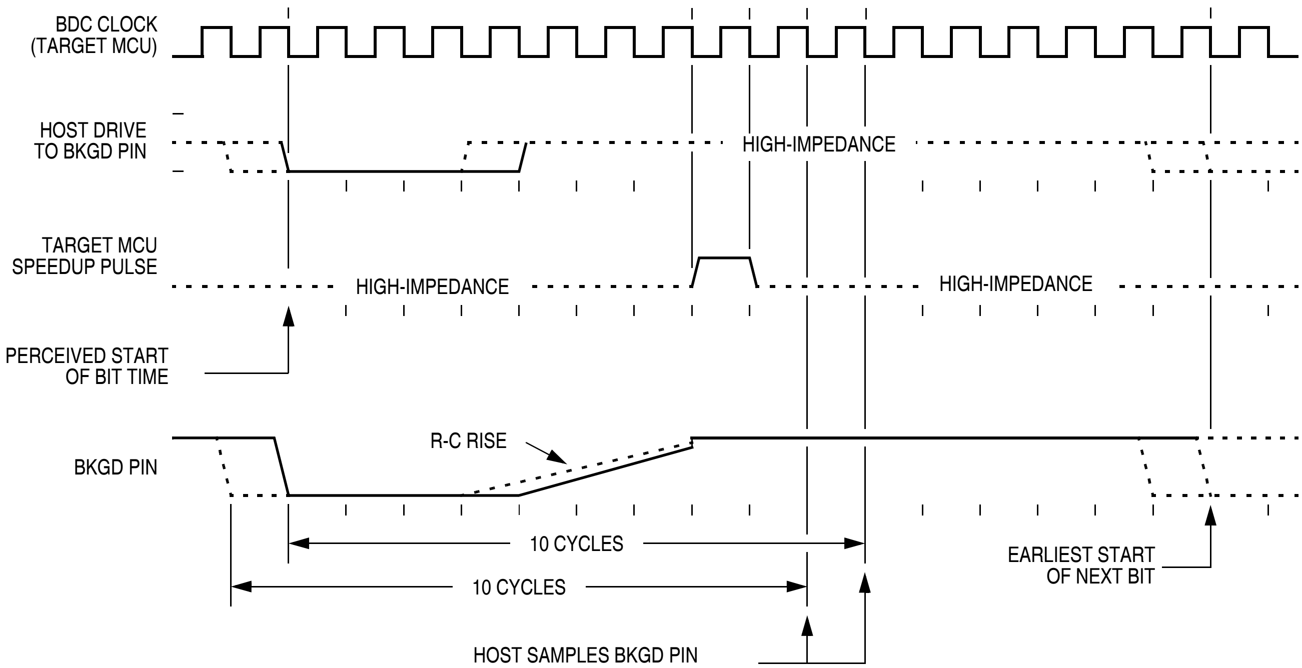


Figure 12-3. BDC Target-to-Host Serial Bit Timing (Logic 1)

Figure 12-4 shows the host receiving a logic 0 from the target HCS08 MCU. Because the host is asynchronous to the target MCU, there is a 0-to-1 cycle delay from the host-generated falling edge on BKGD to the start of the bit time as perceived by the target MCU. The host initiates the bit time but the target HCS08 finishes it. Because the target wants the host to receive a logic 0, it drives the BKGD pin low for 13 BDC clock cycles, then briefly drives it high to speed up the rising edge. The host samples the bit level about 10 cycles after starting the bit time.

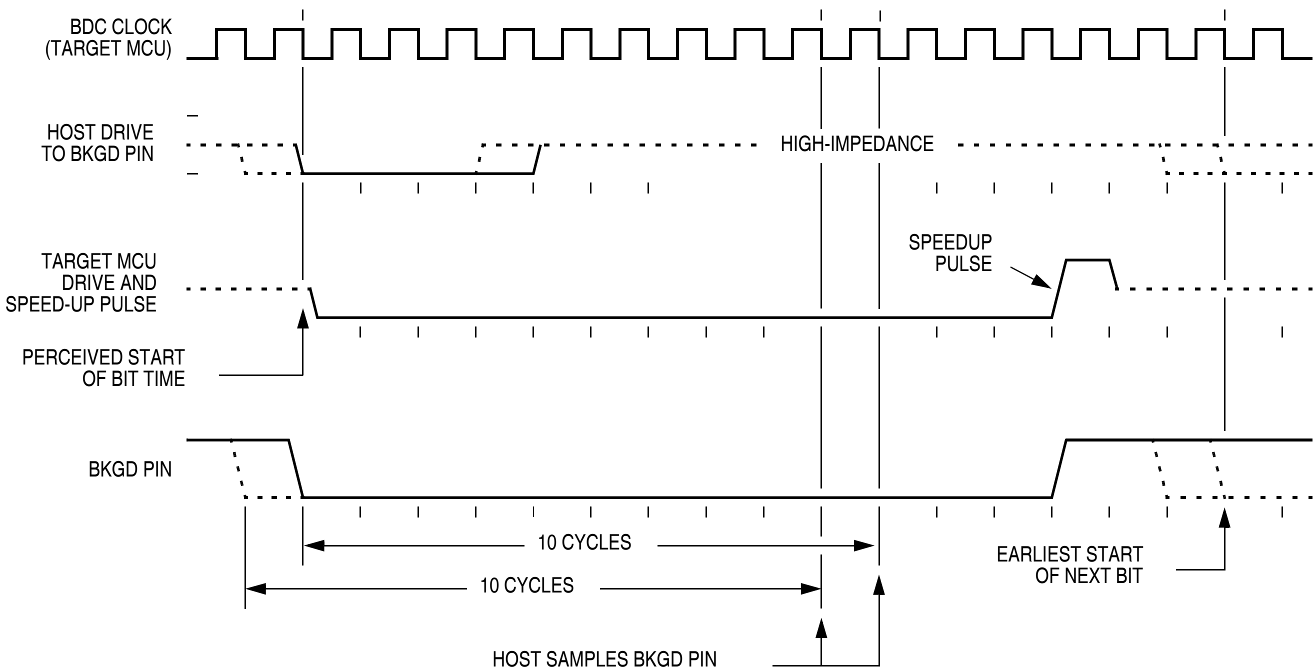


Figure 12-4. BDM Target-to-Host Serial Bit Timing (Logic 0)

12.2.3 BDC Commands

BDC commands are sent serially from a host computer to the BKGD pin of the target HCS08 MCU. All commands and data are sent MSB-first using a custom BDC communications protocol. Active background mode commands require that the target MCU is currently in the active background mode while non-intrusive commands may be issued at any time whether the target MCU is in active background mode or running a user application program.

Table 12-1 shows all HCS08 BDC commands, a shorthand description of their coding structure, and the meaning of each command.

Coding Structure Nomenclature

This nomenclature is used in Table 12-1 to describe the coding structure of the BDC commands.

		Commands begin with an 8-bit hexadecimal command code in the host-to-target direction (most significant bit first)
/	=	separates parts of the command
d	=	delay 16 target BDC clock cycles
AAAA	=	a 16-bit address in the host-to-target direction
RD	=	8 bits of read data in the target-to-host direction
WD	=	8 bits of write data in the host-to-target direction
RD16	=	16 bits of read data in the target-to-host direction
WD16	=	16 bits of write data in the host-to-target direction
SS	=	the contents of BDCSCR in the target-to-host direction (STATUS)
CC	=	8 bits of write data for BDCSCR in the host-to-target direction (CONTROL)
RBKP	=	16 bits of read data in the target-to-host direction (from BDCBKPT breakpoint register)
WBKP	=	16 bits of write data in the host-to-target direction (for BDCBKPT breakpoint register)

Table 12-1. BDC Command Summary

Command Mnemonic	Active BDM/ Non-intrusive	Coding Structure	Description
SYNC	Non-intrusive	n/a[1]	Request a timed reference pulse to determine target BDC communication speed
ACK_ENABLE	Non-intrusive	D5/d	Enable acknowledge protocol. Refer to Freescale document order no. HCS08RMv1/D.
ACK_DISABLE	Non-intrusive	D6/d	Disable acknowledge protocol. Refer to Freescale document order no. HCS08RMv1/D.
BACKGROUND	Non-intrusive	90/d	Enter active background mode if enabled (ignore if ENBDM bit equals 0)
READ_STATUS	Non-intrusive	E4/SS	Read BDC status from BDCSCR
WRITE_CONTROL	Non-intrusive	C4/CC	Write BDC controls in BDCSCR
READ_BYTE	Non-intrusive	E0/AAAA/d/RD	Read a byte from target memory
READ_BYTE_WS	Non-intrusive	E1/AAAA/d/SS/RD	Read a byte and report status
READ_LAST	Non-intrusive	E8/SS/RD	Re-read byte from address just read and report status
WRITE_BYTE	Non-intrusive	C0/AAAA/WD/d	Write a byte to target memory
WRITE_BYTE_WS	Non-intrusive	C1/AAAA/WD/d/SS	Write a byte and report status
READ_BKPT	Non-intrusive	E2/RBKP	Read BDCBKPT breakpoint register
WRITE_BKPT	Non-intrusive	C2/WBKP	Write BDCBKPT breakpoint register
GO	Active BDM	08/d	Go to execute the user application program starting at the address currently in the PC
TRACE1	Active BDM	10/d	Trace 1 user instruction at the address in the PC, then return to active background mode
TAGGO	Active BDM	18/d	Same as GO but enable external tagging (HCS08 devices have no external tagging pin)
READ_A	Active BDM	68/d/RD	Read accumulator (A)
READ_CCR	Active BDM	69/d/RD	Read condition code register (CCR)
READ_PC	Active BDM	6B/d/RD16	Read program counter (PC)
READ_HX	Active BDM	6C/d/RD16	Read H and X register pair (H:X)
READ_SP	Active BDM	6F/d/RD16	Read stack pointer (SP)
READ_NEXT	Active BDM	70/d/RD	Increment H:X by one then read memory byte located at H:X
READ_NEXT_WS	Active BDM	71/d/SS/RD	Increment H:X by one then read memory byte located at H:X. Report status and data.
WRITE_A	Active BDM	48/WD/d	Write accumulator (A)
WRITE_CCR	Active BDM	49/WD/d	Write condition code register (CCR)
WRITE_PC	Active BDM	4B/WD16/d	Write program counter (PC)
WRITE_HX	Active BDM	4C/WD16/d	Write H and X register pair (H:X)
WRITE_SP	Active BDM	4F/WD16/d	Write stack pointer (SP)
WRITE_NEXT	Active BDM	50/WD/d	Increment H:X by one, then write memory byte located at H:X
WRITE_NEXT_WS	Active BDM	51/WD/d/SS	Increment H:X by one, then write memory byte located at H:X. Also report status.

[1] The SYNC command is a special operation that does not have a command code.

The SYNC command is unlike other BDC commands because the host does not necessarily know the correct communications speed to use for BDC communications until after it has analyzed the response to the SYNC command.

To issue a SYNC command, the host:

- Drives the BKGD pin low for at least 128 cycles of the slowest possible BDC clock (The slowest clock is normally the reference oscillator/64 or the self-clocked rate/64.)
- Drives BKGD high for a brief speedup pulse to get a fast rise time (This speedup pulse is typically one cycle of the fastest clock in the system.)
- Removes all drive to the BKGD pin so it reverts to high impedance
- Monitors the BKGD pin for the sync response pulse

The target, upon detecting the SYNC request from the host (which is a much longer low time than would ever occur during normal BDC communications):

- Waits for BKGD to return to a logic high
- Delays 16 cycles to allow the host to stop driving the high speedup pulse
- Drives BKGD low for 128 BDC clock cycles
- Drives a 1-cycle high speedup pulse to force a fast rise time on BKGD
- Removes all drive to the BKGD pin so it reverts to high impedance

The host measures the low time of this 128-cycle sync response pulse and determines the correct speed for subsequent BDC communications. Typically, the host can determine the correct communication speed within a few percent of the actual target speed and the communication protocol can easily tolerate speed errors of several percent.

12.2.4 BDC Hardware Breakpoint

The BDC includes one relatively simple hardware breakpoint that compares the CPU address bus to a 16-bit match value in the BDCBKPT register. This breakpoint can generate a forced breakpoint or a tagged breakpoint. A forced breakpoint causes the CPU to enter active background mode at the first instruction boundary following any access to the breakpoint address. The tagged breakpoint causes the instruction opcode at the breakpoint address to be tagged so that the CPU will enter active background mode rather than executing that instruction if and when it reaches the end of the instruction queue. This implies that tagged breakpoints can only be placed at the address of an instruction opcode while forced breakpoints can be set at any address.

The breakpoint enable (BKPTEN) control bit in the BDC status and control register (BDCSCR) is used to enable the breakpoint logic (BKPTEN = 1). When BKPTEN = 0, its default value after reset, the breakpoint logic is disabled and no BDC breakpoints are requested regardless of the values in other BDC breakpoint registers and control bits. The force/tag select (FTS) control bit in BDCSCR is used to select forced (FTS = 1) or tagged (FTS = 0) type breakpoints.

12.3 Register Definition

This section contains the descriptions of the BDC registers and control bits.

This section refers to registers and control bits only by their names. A Freescale-provided equate or header file is used to translate these names into the appropriate absolute addresses.

12.3.1 BDC Registers and Control Bits

The BDC has two registers:

- The BDC status and control register (BDCSCR) is an 8-bit register containing control and status bits for the background debug controller.
- The BDC breakpoint match register (BDCBKPT) holds a 16-bit breakpoint match address.

These registers are accessed with dedicated serial BDC commands and are not located in the memory space of the target MCU (so they do not have addresses and cannot be accessed by user programs).

Some of the bits in the BDCSCR have write limitations; otherwise, these registers may be read or written at any time. For example, the ENBDM control bit may not be written while the MCU is in active background mode. (This prevents the ambiguous condition of the control bit forbidding active background mode while the MCU is already in active background mode.) Also, the four status bits (BDMACT, WS, WSF, and DVF) are read-only status indicators and can never be written by the WRITE_CONTROL serial BDC command. The clock switch (CLKSW) control bit may be read or written at any time.

12.3.1.1 BDC Status and Control Register (BDCSCR)

This register can be read or written by serial BDC commands (READ_STATUS and WRITE_CONTROL) but is not accessible to user programs because it is not located in the normal memory map of the MCU.

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	ENBDM	BDMACT	BKPTEN	FTS	CLKSW	WS	WSF	DVF
W	ENBDM		BKPTEN	FTS	CLKSW			
Normal Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Reset in Active BDM:	1	1	0	0	1	0	0	0

= Unimplemented or Reserved

Figure 12-5. BDC Status and Control Register (BDCSCR)

Table 12-2. BDCSCR Register Field Descriptions

Field	Description
7 ENBDM	**Enable BDM (Permit Active Background Mode)** — Typically, this bit is written to 1 by the debug host shortly after the beginning of a debug session or whenever the debug host resets the target and remains 1 until a normal reset clears it. 0 BDM cannot be made active (non-intrusive commands still allowed) 1 BDM can be made active to allow active background mode commands
6 BDMACT	**Background Mode Active Status** — This is a read-only status bit. 0 BDM not active (user application program running) 1 BDM active and waiting for serial commands
5 BKPTEN	**BDC Breakpoint Enable** — If this bit is clear, the BDC breakpoint is disabled and the FTS (force tag select) control bit and BDCBKPT match register are ignored. 0 BDC breakpoint disabled 1 BDC breakpoint enabled
4 FTS	**Force/Tag Select** — When FTS = 1, a breakpoint is requested whenever the CPU address bus matches the BDCBKPT match register. When FTS = 0, a match between the CPU address bus and the BDCBKPT register causes the fetched opcode to be tagged. If this tagged opcode ever reaches the end of the instruction queue, the CPU enters active background mode rather than executing the tagged opcode. 0 Tag opcode at breakpoint address and enter active background mode if CPU attempts to execute that instruction 1 Breakpoint match forces active background mode at next instruction boundary (address need not be an opcode)
3 CLKSW	**Select Source for BDC Communications Clock** — CLKSW defaults to 0, which selects the alternate BDC clock source. 0 Alternate BDC clock source 1 MCU bus clock

Table 12-2. BDCSCR Register Field Descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
2 WS	**Wait or Stop Status** — When the target CPU is in wait or stop mode, most BDC commands cannot function. However, the BACKGROUND command can be used to force the target CPU out of wait or stop and into active background mode where all BDC commands work. Whenever the host forces the target MCU into active background mode, the host should issue a READ_STATUS command to check that BDMACT = 1 before attempting other BDC commands. 0 Target CPU is running user application code or in active background mode (was not in wait or stop mode when background became active) 1 Target CPU is in wait or stop mode, or a BACKGROUND command was used to change from wait or stop to active background mode
1 WSF	**Wait or Stop Failure Status** — This status bit is set if a memory access command failed due to the target CPU executing a wait or stop instruction at or about the same time. The usual recovery strategy is to issue a BACKGROUND command to get out of wait or stop mode into active background mode, repeat the command that failed, then return to the user program. (Typically, the host would restore CPU registers and stack values and re-execute the wait or stop instruction.) 0 Memory access did not conflict with a wait or stop instruction 1 Memory access command failed because the CPU entered wait or stop mode
0 DVF	**Data Valid Failure Status** — This status bit is not used in the MC9S08NM8 because it does not have any slow access memory. 0 Memory access did not conflict with a slow memory access 1 Memory access command failed because CPU was not finished with a slow memory access

12.3.1.2 BDC Breakpoint Match Register (BDCBKPT)

This 16-bit register holds the address for the hardware breakpoint in the BDC. The BKPTEN and FTS control bits in BDCSCR are used to enable and configure the breakpoint logic. Dedicated serial BDC commands (READ_BKPT and WRITE_BKPT) are used to read and write the BDCBKPT register but is not accessible to user programs because it is not located in the normal memory map of the MCU. Breakpoints are normally set while the target MCU is in active background mode before running the user application program. For additional information about setup and use of the hardware breakpoint logic in the BDC, refer to Section 12.2.4, “BDC Hardware Breakpoint.”

12.3.2 System Background Debug Force Reset Register (SBDFR)

This register contains a single write-only control bit. A serial background mode command such as WRITE_BYTE must be used to write to SBDFR. Attempts to write this register from a user program are ignored. Reads always return 0x00.

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
W								BDFR[1]
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

= Unimplemented or Reserved

1 BDFR is writable only through serial background mode debug commands, not from user programs.

Figure 12-6. System Background Debug Force Reset Register (SBDFR)

Table 12-3. SBDFR Register Field Description

Field	Description
0 BDFR	**Background Debug Force Reset** — A serial active background mode command such as WRITE_BYTE allows an external debug host to force a target system reset. Writing 1 to this bit forces an MCU reset. This bit cannot be written from a user program.

How to Reach Us:

Home Page:
www.freescale.com

Web Support:
http://www.freescale.com/support

USA/Europe or Locations Not Listed:
Freescale Semiconductor, Inc.
Technical Information Center, EL516
2100 East Elliot Road
Tempe, Arizona 85284
1-800-521-6274 or +1-480-768-2130
www.freescale.com/support

Europe, Middle East, and Africa:
Freescale Halbleiter Deutschland GmbH
Technical Information Center
Schatzbogen 7
81829 Muenchen, Germany
+44 1296 380 456 (English)
+46 8 52200080 (English)
+49 89 92103 559 (German)
+33 1 69 35 48 48 (French)
www.freescale.com/support

Japan:
Freescale Semiconductor Japan Ltd.
Headquarters
ARCO Tower 15F
1-8-1, Shimo-Meguro, Meguro-ku,
Tokyo 153-0064
Japan
0120 191014 or +81 3 5437 9125
support.japan@freescale.com

Asia/Pacific:
Freescale Semiconductor China Ltd.
Exchange Building 23F
No. 118 Jianguo Road
Chaoyang District
Beijing 100022
China
+86 10 5879 8000
support.asia@freescale.com

For Literature Requests Only:
Freescale Semiconductor Literature Distribution Center
1-800-441-2447 or +1-303-675-2140
Fax: +1-303-675-2150
LDCForFreescaleSemiconductor@hibbertgroup.com

MC9S08SC4RM
Rev.4
7/2010